

MAI LAN HƯƠNG - NGUYỄN THỊ THANH TÂM

NGỮ PHÁP TIẾNG ANH TRẮC NGHIỆM

Lý thuyết và bài tập

TRUNG TÂM BIÊN SOẠN DỊCH THUẬT SÁCH SÀI GÒN (SAIGONBOOK)
giữ quyền sở hữu tác phẩm

**ĐỂ CHỐNG LÀM GIẢ - IN LẬU; CHÚNG TÔI CHO IN
32 TRANG MÀU CÓ HÌNH CHÌM, CHẤT LƯỢNG CAO.
XIN QUÝ KHÁCH HÀNG KIỂM TRA ĐỂ TRÁNH MUA
NHẦM SÁCH GIẢ.**



**TRUNG TÂM SÁCH SÀI GÒN
CHUYÊN NGHIỆP BÁN SÁCH
VÀ CHỈ CÓ BÁN SÁCH**

nxb Đà Nẵng

NGŨ PHÁP TIẾNG ANH TRẮC NGHIỆM

MAI LAN HƯƠNG - NGUYỄN THỊ THANH TÂM

<i>Chịu trách nhiệm xuất bản:</i>	TRƯỜNG CÔNG BÁO
<i>Tổng biên tập:</i>	HOÀNG VĂN CUNG
<i>Biên tập:</i>	HUỲNH YÊN TRÂM MY
<i>Trình bày:</i>	SAIGONBOOK
<i>Bìa:</i>	TRẦN VĂN NHÂN
<i>Sửa bản in:</i>	QUỲNH MAI

**ĐỂ CHỐNG LÀM GIẢ - IN LẬU; CHÚNG TÔI CHO IN
32 TRANG MÀU CÓ HÌNH CHÌM, CHẤT LƯỢNG CAO.
XIN QUÝ KHÁCH HÀNG KIỂM TRA ĐỂ TRÁNH MUA
NHẦM SÁCH GIẢ.**

Đơn vị liên doanh: **CTY TNHH PHÁT HÀNH SÁCH SÀI GÒN**

In: 1.000 cuốn, khổ 17 x 25 cm, tại Cty cổ phần in Hoa Mai. Theo TNKH số:
549-2009/CXB/ 167 - 01/ĐaN cấp ngày 20 tháng 7 năm 2011. In xong và nộp lưu
chiếu tháng 8 năm 2011

LỜI NÓI ĐẦU

Chúng tôi đã xuất bản quyển Ngữ Pháp tiếng Anh năm 2000 và Giải thích Ngữ pháp tiếng Anh năm 2007. Cả 2 quyển sách đều được học sinh, phụ huynh và quý thầy cô sử dụng làm tài liệu tham khảo hướng dẫn học trong nhà trường. Hiện nay sách đang được tái bản với số lượng lớn. Tuy vậy, chúng tôi nhận thấy dung lượng 2 quyển sách không chứa đựng hết các bài tập trắc nghiệm theo các chủ điểm ngữ pháp. Thế theo góp ý và đề nghị của nhiều bạn đọc, chúng tôi biên soạn quyển **Trắc Nghiệm Ngữ pháp Tiếng Anh**.

Sách có 2 phần:

Phần 1: Gồm 22 chủ điểm ngữ pháp thường được ra trong các kì thi. Các chủ điểm được giải thích rõ ràng, cụ thể. Sau mỗi chủ điểm có bài tập trắc nghiệm nhằm giúp học viên luyện tập và củng cố kiến thức.

Phần 2: Gồm 12 bài thực hành (Practice Tests). Mỗi Test có 100 câu trắc nghiệm, tổng hợp tất cả các kiến thức ngữ pháp đã học.

Học viên phải tự làm bài tập, sau đó đối chiếu đáp án, ghi nhớ các điểm quan trọng và tự sửa lỗi để nâng cao trình độ tiếng Anh của mình.

Chúng tôi tin rằng quyển sách này sẽ rất hữu ích cho các bạn trong việc tham khảo ngữ pháp tiếng Anh và thực hành bài tập trắc nghiệm.

Mặc dù chúng tôi đã rất cố gắng trong quá trình biên soạn nhưng khó tránh khỏi những thiếu sót. Rất mong nhận được sự đóng góp chân tình của bạn đọc để sách được hoàn thiện hơn trong những lần in sau.

Chúc các bạn thành công trong học tập và đạt kết quả cao trong các kỳ thi.

Mai Lan Hương

Thư góp ý phê bình sách xin gửi đến:

TRUNG TÂM BIÊN SOẠN DỊCH THUẬT SÁCH SÀI GÒN

217/4 đường Nơ Trang Long, Q. Bình Thạnh, TP.HCM

Email: saigonbook@hcm.fpt.vn

**ĐỂ CHỐNG LÀM GIẢ - IN LẬU; CHÚNG TÔI CHO IN
32 TRANG MÀU CÓ HÌNH CHÌM, CHẤT LƯỢNG CAO.
XIN QUÝ KHÁCH HÀNG KIỂM TRA ĐỂ TRÁNH MUA
NHẦM SÁCH GIẢ.**

MỤC LỤC

MODULE 1: PERSONAL PRONOUNS, POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS, AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS	5
MODULE 2: COUNTABLE AND UNCOUNTABLE NOUNS, QUANTIFIERS	10
MODULE 3: COMPOUND NOUNS AND GENITIVE / POSSESSIVE CASE	15
MODULE 4: ARTICLES	20
MODULE 5: PREPOSITIONS	25
MODULE 6: PHRASAL VERBS	32
MODULE 7: CONJUNCTIONS	36
MODULE 8: SUBJECT – VERB AGREEMENT	40
MODULE 9: TENSES	45
MODULE 10: MODAL VERBS	62
MODULE 11: CONDITIONAL SENTENCES - WISH AND IF ONLY	68
MODULE 12: PASSIVE FORM	74
MODULE 13: REPORTED SPEECH	79
MODULE 14: GERUNDS AND INFINITIVES	85
MODULE 15: COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS	92
MODULE 16: RELATIVE CLAUSES	97
MODULE 17: ADVERB CLAUSES	103
MODULE 18: NOUN CLAUSES	111
MODULE 19: WORD FORMATION AND WORD ORDER	115
MODULE 20: QUESTIONS	126
MODULE 21: PHRASES	130
MODULE 22: INVERSION	136
PRACTICE TEST	141
ĐÁP ÁN	217

**ĐỂ CHỐNG LÀM GIẢ - IN LẬU; CHÚNG TÔI CHO IN
32 TRANG MÀU CÓ HÌNH CHÌM, CHẤT LƯỢNG CAO.
XIN QUÝ KHÁCH HÀNG KIỂM TRA ĐỂ TRÁNH MUA
NHẦM SÁCH GIẢ.**

MODULE 1

PERSONAL PRONOUNS, POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS, AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

(Đại từ nhân xưng, đại từ sở hữu, và đại từ phản thân)

I. PERSONAL PRONOUNS (Đại từ nhân xưng)

Đại từ Nhân xưng được dùng chỉ người, nhóm người, vật, hay nhóm vật cụ thể; hoặc được dùng để thay thế cho danh từ đã được đề cập khi không cần thiết lập lại. Đại từ nhân xưng được chia làm hai loại: Đại từ nhân xưng chủ ngữ (Subjective personal pronouns) và Đại từ nhân xưng tân ngữ (Objective personal pronouns).

NGÔI (PERSON)	SỐ ÍT (SINGULAR)			SỐ NHIỀU (PLURAL)		
	Chủ ngữ	Tân ngữ	Nghĩa	Chủ ngữ	Tân ngữ	Nghĩa
Thứ I	I	me	tôi	We	us	chúng tôi
Thứ II	You	you	bạn	You	you	các bạn
Thứ III	He	him	anh ấy	They	them	họ / chúng
	She	her	chị ấy			
	It	it	nó			

- Đại từ nhân xưng chủ ngữ được dùng làm chủ ngữ của động từ.

Ví dụ: I am an accountant. (Tôi là kế toán.)

- Đại từ nhân xưng tân ngữ được dùng làm tân ngữ trực tiếp hoặc gián tiếp của động từ hoặc của giới từ.

Ví dụ: Mary gave **me** a dictionary, and I like **it** very much.

(Mary tặng tôi một quyển từ điển, và tôi thích nó lắm.)

We are bored up with **him**. (Chúng tôi chán anh ta lắm rồi.)

• Một số cách dùng của It

1. **It** được dùng làm chủ ngữ giả (formal subject) hoặc tân ngữ giả (formal object)

Ví dụ: **It** is necessary to learn English. (Học tiếng Anh là cần thiết)

[= Learning English is necessary.]

I found **it** impossible to understand that problem.

(Tôi thấy không thể hiểu được vấn đề đó.)

2. **It** được dùng để chỉ vật, con vật hoặc người khi không cần đề cập đến giới tính.

Ví dụ: Look at that house. **It** is so magnificent.

(Nhìn ngôi nhà kia xem. Nó thật tráng lệ.)

Who's that? – **It** is Peter. (Ai đó? – Đó là Peter.)

3. **It** được dùng làm chủ ngữ giả khi nói về thời gian, thời tiết, nhiệt độ, khoảng cách, hay số đo.

Ví dụ: **It** is often sunny in the dry season. (Trời thường nắng vào mùa khô.)
It is 4 o'clock. (Bây giờ là 4 giờ)
 How far is it from here to the bus stop? – **It** is two kilometers.
 (Từ đây đến trạm xe buýt bao xa? – 2 kilômét.)

4. **It** được dùng để nói về một sự việc, một tình huống đã được đề cập.

Ví dụ: He failed again. **It** made him so disappointed.
 (Anh ấy lại thất bại. Điều này làm anh ấy rất thất vọng.)

He cheated me. I will never forget **it**.

(Anh ta lừa tôi. Tôi sẽ không bao giờ quên điều đó.)

5. **It** được dùng với động từ *to be* để nhấn mạnh cho một từ hoặc cụm từ.

Ví dụ: **It** was Tom and Mary that helped us to complete the work.

(Chính Tom và Mary đã giúp chúng tôi hoàn thành công việc.)

II. POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES AND POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS (Tính từ sở hữu và đại từ sở hữu)

Đại từ nhân xưng	Tính từ sở hữu	Đại từ sở hữu	Nghĩa
I	my	mine	<i>của tôi</i>
You	your	yours	<i>của bạn / các bạn</i>
He	his	his	<i>của anh ấy</i>
She	her	her	<i>của chị ấy</i>
It	its	x	<i>của nó</i>
We	our	ours	<i>của chúng tôi</i>
They	their	theirs	<i>của họ / chúng</i>

* **It** không có dạng đại từ sở hữu.

- Tính từ sở hữu được dùng trước danh từ để chỉ danh từ đó thuộc về người nào, vật nào.

Ví dụ: That is **my** house. (Đây là nhà của tôi.)

The dog has just had **its** breakfast.

(Con chó vừa ăn xong bữa sáng của nó.)

- Đại từ sở hữu không đứng trước danh từ. Đại từ sở hữu được dùng để thay thế cho tính từ sở hữu và danh từ đứng sau.

Ví dụ: Can I borrow your cell phone? I have left **mine** (= my cell phone) at home. (Tôi mượn điện thoại di động của bạn được không? Tôi bỏ quên điện thoại của tôi ở nhà.)

- Đại từ sở hữu theo sau *of* trong sở hữu kép (double possessive)

Ví dụ: This is a picture **of theirs**. (Đây là một trong những tấm ảnh của họ.) [= This is one of their pictures.]

III. REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS (Đại từ phản thân)

Đại từ nhân xưng	Đại từ phản thân	Nghĩa
I	myself	<i>tự / chính tôi</i>
You	yourself	<i>tự / chính bạn</i>
He	himself	<i>tự / chính anh ấy</i>
She	herself	<i>tự / chính chị ấy</i>

It	itself	tự / chính nó
We	ourselves	tự / chính chúng tôi
you	yourselves	tự / chính các bạn
They	themselves	tự / chính họ / chúng

- Đại từ phản thân được dùng làm tân ngữ (object) khi chủ ngữ và tân ngữ của câu chỉ cùng một đối tượng.

Ví dụ: The gunman killed **him** as soon as he came in. (*Tên cướp giết chết anh ta ngay khi anh ta bước vào.*) [him = another person]

The gunman killed **himself** as soon as he came in. (*Tên cướp tự sát ngay khi anh ta bước vào.*) [himself = the gunman]

- Đại từ phản thân còn được dùng ngay sau đại từ nhân xưng hoặc danh từ để nhấn mạnh – trong trường hợp này đại từ phản thân được gọi là đại từ nhấn mạnh (Emphatic pronouns).

Ví dụ: I **myself** saw him break into the house.

(*Chính tôi thấy hắn đột nhập vào nhà.*)

The customer wanted to talk to the manager **himself**.

(*Người khách hàng muốn nói chuyện với chính giám đốc.*)

- BY + Đại từ phản thân = alone, without any help

Ví dụ: John did all things **by himself** (= without any help).

(*Một mình John làm hết mọi việc.*)

MULTIPLE CHOICE

Choose a, b, c, or d that best completes the sentence.

1. What are _____ doing? – _____ am doing _____ homework.
a. you / I / my b. your / Myself / I c. yourself / I / mine d. yours / Mine / me
2. _____ ideas are different from _____, but I am sure _____ are still good friends.
a. You / my / our b. Yours / I / us c. Your / mine / we d. Yourself / my / we
3. I cannot lend you _____ laptop. I need it _____.
a. my / myself b. mine / me c. myself / me d. me / my
4. Although we are best friends, my ideas are different from _____.
a. he b. his c. him d. himself
5. She is not as clever as _____ expect.
a. we b. our c. ours d. us
6. The girl looked at _____ in the mirror and smiled.
a. she b. herself c. hers d. she's
7. Sometimes _____ feel envious of what _____ have.
a. we / they b. we / them c. our / their d. us / they
8. Your new dress looks the same as _____.
a. I b. my c. mine d. myself
9. – Who helped _____ with the work?
– They did it _____.
a. their / they b. they / them c. they / theirs d. them / themselves

10. The dog often waves _____ tail whenever Bob comes home.
 a. it b. it's c. itself d. its
11. I am as tall as _____ is.
 a. he b. him c. his d. himself
12. Everyone has _____ own responsibility.
 a. my b. your c. his d. its
13. Those children show _____ special interest in painting.
 a. its b. their c. his d. our
14. AIDS is dangerous. _____ has not been able to be cured up to the present time.
 a. They b. It c. Themselves d. Its
15. Several animals are in danger of extinction. We should find ways to protect _____.
 a. us b. them c. ourselves d. themselves
16. I think your son is old enough to go to school by _____.
 a. he b. his c. him d. himself
17. He bought that car 5 years ago but _____ still looks new.
 a. it b. itself c. he d. himself
18. Mary is independent. She likes doing things on _____ own.
 a. she b. her c. herself d. hers
19. My house is smaller than _____.
 a. Peter b. he c. him d. Peter's
20. Each nation has _____ own language.
 a. it b. itself c. its d. it's
21. Johnny's got the apartment to _____ next week.
 a. his b. he c. him d. himself
22. Mary can teach _____ to use a computer.
 a. herself b. she c. hers d. she's
23. The English understand each other, but I do not understand _____.
 a. they b. he c. them d. him
24. Each of _____ will have to be on duty one day a month.
 a. we b. us c. our d. ourselves
25. Mumps is usually caught by children. _____ causes a mild fever and painful swelling of the glands in the neck.
 a. It b. They c. He d. She
26. My name is John. What is _____?
 a. yourselves b. your c. yours d. yourself
27. On the night of 14 April 1912, during _____ first voyage, the Titanic hit an iceberg and sank two hours and forty minutes later.
 a. his b. her c. their d. our
28. My grandmother left Jane and _____ her farm.
 a. I b. mine c. my d. me
29. His knowledge of foreign languages is wide. _____ helps him a lot in his work.
 a. You b. They c. It d. He
30. Peter earns more money than _____ do.
 a. I b. me c. myself d. mine

31. Nobody in the neighborhood, not even _____, expected that a riot would break out.
a. he b. him c. his d. he's
32. The only students in the classroom this morning were John and _____.
a. I b. me c. my d. mine
33. I don't want anybody but _____ to work on this project.
a. she b. her c. hers d. she's
34. I really don't appreciate _____ walking late into class every morning.
a. you b. your c. yours d. yourself
35. The principal made Tom and _____ repair the damage to the auditorium wall.
a. I b. my c. me d. mine
36. Josie, Mary, and _____ rode their bikes all the way to New Hampshire.
a. he b. him c. his d. he's
37. Who else could have taken it other than _____?
a. he b. him c. his d. he's
38. Most teenagers long for the day when _____ will get their driving license and the freedom that comes with _____.
a. they / them b. it / them c. it / they d. they / it
39. Where can we meet? - _____ up to you.
a. It's b. It c. Its d. Itself
40. I will try _____ best to help _____.
a. mine / your b. my / you c. me / yours d. I / you
41. My wife has become crippled by arthritis. She is embarrassed to ask the doctor about _____.
a. them b. it c. her d. his
42. Education gets everywhere these days, doesn't _____?
a. they b. them c. its d. it
43. There are some bottles of wine on the shelf. _____ for the party tomorrow.
a. He is b. You are c. They are d. It is
44. We are not sure who is driving, but it might be _____.
a. she b. her c. hers d. herself
45. They collected the evidence all by _____.
a. they b. their c. theirs d. themselves
46. There were marks on the snow but _____ unrecognizable.
a. it was b. they were c. it is d. they are
47. I am not good at mathematics. _____ difficult.
a. I am b. It is c. They are d. He is
48. - Did you consider taking part in volunteer programs?
- Yes, I have thought about _____.
a. it b. you c. them d. myself
49. Let's go to her party. _____ is rude to turn down _____ invitation.
a. She / mine b. He / its c. It / her d. She / my
50. One of the local people told her daughter to write _____ a letter to thank for _____ help.
a. ourselves / we b. we / ours c. our / us d. us / our

MODULE 2

COUNTABLE AND UNCOUNTABLE NOUNS, QUANTIFIERS (Danh từ đếm được và danh từ không đếm được, từ chỉ số lượng)

I. COUNTABLE AND UNCOUNTABLE NOUNS (Danh từ đếm được và danh từ không đếm được)

1. **Danh từ đếm được (countable nouns)** là danh từ chỉ người, vật, ý niệm, ... riêng lẻ có thể đếm được.

Danh từ đếm được có hai hình thức: số ít và số nhiều. Ta có thể dùng mạo từ *a/ an* trước danh từ đếm được số ít và các con số hoặc *some, any, many, few* trước danh từ đếm được số nhiều.

Ví dụ: a **box** (một cái hộp) three **boxes** (ba cái hộp)
an **elephant** (một con voi) many **elephants** (nhiều con voi)

• Cách thành lập danh từ số nhiều

a. Thêm S vào danh từ số ít.

Ví dụ: book → books pencil → pencils

b. Thêm ES sau danh từ số ít tận cùng là S, SS, SH, CH, X, Z, ZZ.

Ví dụ: bus → buses dish → dishes
watch → watches fox → foxes
quiz → quizzes buzz → buzzes

c. Thêm S hoặc ES sau danh từ số ít tận cùng là O.

- Thêm S nếu trước O là một nguyên âm (a, e, i, o, u), các từ vay mượn của nước ngoài hoặc các từ viết tắt.

Ví dụ: radio → radios
micro (= microcomputer) → micros

- Thêm ES nếu trước O là một phụ âm.

Ví dụ: potato → potatoes hero → heroes

- Một số danh từ có thể có hai hình thức số nhiều.

Ví dụ: buffalo → buffalos, buffaloes

d. Thêm S hoặc ES sau danh từ số ít tận cùng là Y.

- Thêm S nếu trước Y là một nguyên âm.

Ví dụ: play → plays boy → boys

- Y → IES nếu trước Y là một phụ âm.

Ví dụ: lorry → lorries supply → supplies

e. Một số danh từ số ít tận cùng là F/ FE (*calf, half, knife, leaf, life, loaf, self, chef, thief, wife, wolf, sheaf*) về số nhiều sẽ thành VES.

Ví dụ: leaf → leaves thief → thieves

- Thêm S vào các danh từ tận cùng bằng F/ FE khác.

Ví dụ: belief → beliefs café → cafes

- Một số danh từ có hai hình thức số nhiều.

Ví dụ: dwarf → dwarfs, dwarves

f. Một số danh từ có hình thức số nhiều bất qui tắc.

<u>Ví dụ:</u> child → children	foot → feet
goose → geese	ox → oxen
man → men	mouse → mice
tooth → teeth	woman → women
sheep → sheep	deer → deer

2. **Danh từ không đếm được (uncountable nouns)** là danh từ chỉ những khái niệm trừu tượng, chất liệu, chất lỏng, hoặc một tổng thể.

Danh từ không đếm được không có hình thức số nhiều. Không dùng mạo từ *a/an* hoặc các con số trước danh từ không đếm được.

Ví dụ: sadness (*nỗi buồn*), love (*tình yêu*), rice (*gạo/cơm*), oil (*dầu*), furniture (*đồ gỗ*) ...

II. QUANTIFIERS (Từ chỉ số lượng)

Từ hoặc cụm từ chỉ số lượng trong tiếng Anh được dùng tùy theo danh từ đếm được hay không đếm được.

Với danh từ đếm được	Với danh từ không đếm được
some/ any (<i>một vài</i>)	some/ any (<i>một ít</i>)
many (<i>nhiều</i>)	much (<i>nhiều</i>)
a large number of (<i>nhiều</i>)	a large amount of (<i>nhiều</i>)
a great number of (<i>nhiều</i>)	a great deal of (<i>nhiều</i>)
plenty of (<i>nhiều</i>)	plenty of (<i>nhiều</i>)
a lot of/ lots of (<i>nhiều</i>)	a lot of/ lots of (<i>nhiều</i>)
few/ a few (<i>ít/ một vài</i>)	little/ a little (<i>ít/ một ít</i>)
every/ each (<i>mỗi</i>)	
several (<i>một số</i>)	

- *Some* thường được dùng trong câu khẳng định, câu yêu cầu, lời mời hoặc lời đề nghị; *any* thường được dùng trong câu phủ định và nghi vấn.

Ví dụ: Mary needs **some** stamps. She does not need **any** envelopes.

(*Mary cần vài con tem. Cô ấy không cần phong bì.*)

Would you like **some** more coffee? (*Anh dùng thêm một ít cà phê nữa nhé.*)

- *Many, much* thường được dùng trong câu phủ định và nghi vấn; *a lot of/ lots of, a large number/ amount of, a great number/ deal of, plenty of* thường được dùng trong câu khẳng định. Tuy nhiên, *many/ much* luôn được dùng trong câu khẳng định có các từ *very, too, so, as*.

Ví dụ: We have **a lot of** things to do but we don't have **much** time left.

(*Chúng ta có nhiều việc phải làm nhưng chúng ta không còn nhiều thời gian.*)

The new law met with **a great deal of** opposition at local level.

(*Luật mới gặp nhiều phản đối ở địa phương.*)

Peter drank **so much** wine that he felt sick.

(*Peter uống nhiều rượu đến nỗi anh ấy bị bệnh.*)

- *Few, little* chỉ một số lượng rất ít, hầu như không có; *a few, a little* chỉ một số lượng nhỏ (gần nghĩa với *some*).

Ví dụ: She had **few** friends, and was generally not very happy.

(*Cô ấy có rất ít bạn, nên thường cảm thấy không vui.*)

I have **a few** friends here and we meet quite often. (*Ở đây tôi có vài người bạn và chúng tôi rất thường gặp nhau.*)

MULTIPLE CHOICE

Choose a, b, c, or d that best completes the sentence.

- Peter never feels lonely. He has got _____ friends.
a. much b. so much c. many d. a great deal of
- Mr. Pike lived with her three _____ in the countryside.
a. child b. childs c. children d. childrens
- My mother needs _____ milk to make a cake.
a. a b. some c. any d. many
- How _____ apples are there in the basket?
a. many b. much c. some d. any
- I would like to buy _____?
a. a shoes b. a pair of shoes
c. the number of shoes d. a little shoes
- Let's have a break. Would you like to have _____ coffee?
a. any b. many c. little d. some
- Look! There are _____ left over there.
a. a little b. much seats c. many seat d. a few seats
- _____ necessary.
a. A lot of the information are b. Some informations are
c. All the information is d. Many of the informations are
- He was not offered the job because he knew _____ about Information Technology.
a. a little b. little c. many d. a few
- She keeps _____ in the cupboard.
a. all rice b. a lot of rices c. several rice d. many rice
- There are not _____ in that classroom.
a. any student b. a lot of student
c. a great deal of students d. many students
- There is not _____ left in my account.
a. some moneys b. a few money c. much money d. many money
- People have _____ when they get older.
a. much cells b. fewer cells c. few cell d. plenty of cell
- He still finds time for _____ by cooking candlelit dinners for his girlfriend.
a. several romances b. romance c. many romances d. a few romance
- I cannot work because _____.
a. there are too many noises b. there is too much noise
c. of some noises d. of a number of noise

16. In Britain, there are _____.
- a. fewer men than women b. fewer mans than womans
c. too much men d. too much women
17. I think she was merely looking for _____.
- a. happiness b. some happinesses
c. many happinness d. a few happiness
18. _____ an imitation of life.
- a. Art is often called b. Arts are often called
c. An amount of arts are often called d. As sum of art is often called
19. I am in trouble. Would you mind giving me _____?
- a. a few advice b. some advice c. advices d. several advices
20. They have made _____ before the Games starts next month.
- a. a lot of preparation b. lots of preparation
c. lot of preparations d. a lot of preparations
21. Do you serve _____?
- a. some vegetarian dishes b. many vegetarian dish
c. any vegetarian dishes d. vegetarian dish
22. We had _____ after dinner.
- a. few ice cream b. a few ice cream c. a little ice cream d. little ice creams
23. I do not have _____ to make _____.
- a. much potatoes / a soup b. several potato / soups
c. enough potatoes / the soup d. a potatoes / the soups
24. There are _____ on the shelf.
- a. several bottles of wine b. several bottles of wines
c. several bottle of wine d. several bottle of wines
25. We have _____ left to finish the project.
- a. no time b. many time c. a lot of times d. any time
26. _____ have trouble with mathematics.
- a. A large rather number of student b. A rather large number of student
c. A large rather number of students d. A rather large number of students
27. It requires _____ reading.
- a. few b. a few c. many d. an amount of
28. He hasn't _____ of passing his exams.
- a. much hopes b. much hope c. many hope d. many hopes
29. It is important to brush your _____ at least twice a day.
- a. teeth b. teeths c. tooth d. tooths
30. _____ has its own private bathroom.
- a. All bedroom b. A plenty of bedroom
c. Every bedroom d. Every bedrooms
31. Not _____ teenagers spend _____ time on reading books.
- a. much / many b. many / much c. much / much d. many / many
32. We need _____ money to send our son to Oxford University.
- a. a large sum of b. a few of c. many d. lot of

MODULE 3

COMPOUND NOUNS AND GENITIVE / POSSESSIVE CASE (Danh từ ghép và sở hữu cách)

I. COMPOUND NOUNS (Danh từ ghép)

Danh từ ghép (compound noun) là danh từ được thành lập từ hai hay nhiều từ. Các từ của một danh từ ghép có thể viết liền nhau, cách nhau bằng dấu gạch ngang, hay viết tách rời nhau,

Ví dụ: bedroom (*phòng ngủ*), check-in (*sự đăng ký phòng*), swimming pool (*hồ bơi*)

• Cách thành lập danh từ ghép

1. Danh từ + danh từ (noun + noun): armchair, bath-tub, newspaper
2. Tính từ + danh từ (adjective + noun): mineral water, greenhouse
3. Danh động từ + danh từ (gerund + noun): washing machine, driving-licence
4. Danh từ + danh động từ (noun + gerund): weight-lifting, lorry driving
5. Danh từ + động từ (noun + verb): rainfall, toothpick, handshake
6. Động từ + danh từ (verb + noun): pickpocket, washbasin
7. Danh từ + giới từ (noun + preposition): passer-by, hanger-on
8. Giới từ + danh từ (preposition + noun): on-period, bystander
9. Động từ + trạng từ (verb + adverb): getaway, take-off
10. Trạng từ + động từ (adverb + verb): overthrow, outlook

* Danh từ ghép có thể được thành lập bởi nhiều hơn hai từ: mother-in-law, merry-go-round

II. GENITIVE / POSSESSIVE CASE (Sở hữu cách)

Sở hữu cách được dùng để diễn đạt mối quan hệ sở hữu.

• Cách thành lập sở hữu cách

1. Thêm 's vào sau chủ sở hữu với danh từ số ít, danh từ riêng, hoặc danh từ số nhiều không tận cùng bằng s.

Ví dụ: the boy's bicycle (*xe đạp của cậu bé*)

Tom's father (*bố của Tom*)

my children's toys (*đồ chơi của các con tôi*)

2. Thêm dấu ' vào sau danh từ số nhiều tận cùng bằng s.

Ví dụ: the students' books (*sách của các sinh viên*)

the Pikes' car (*xe hơi của gia đình Pike*)

3. Thêm 's hoặc dấu ' sau danh từ số ít hoặc danh từ riêng tận cùng bằng s.

Ví dụ: James's / James' girlfriend (*bạn gái của James*)

my boss's / my boss' office (*văn phòng của sếp tôi.*)

4. Với danh từ ghép, thêm 's vào từ cuối cùng.

Ví dụ: my father-in-law's property (*tài sản của bố chồng tôi*)

5. Khi có nhiều sở hữu chủ đồng sở hữu, thêm 's hoặc ' ở sở hữu chủ gần vật/ người sở hữu nhất.

Ví dụ: Mary and Peter's parents (*bố mẹ của Mary và Peter – Mary và Peter có cùng bố mẹ*)

Mary's and Peter's parents (*bố mẹ của Mary và Peter – Mary và Peter không có cùng bố mẹ*)

• Cách dùng sở hữu cách

Sở hữu cách 's chủ yếu được dùng cho danh từ chỉ người hay động vật. Để chỉ sự vật, ý tưởng, ta dùng **of + danh từ**.

Ví dụ: my brother's book (*sách của anh tôi*), the cat's leg (*chân của con mèo*), the leg **of** the table (*chân bàn*), the result of the match (*kết quả của trận đấu*)

- Khi dùng sở hữu cách, không dùng mạo từ (*a/ an/ the*) trước người hay vật thuộc quyền sở hữu.

Ví dụ: the wolf's ears (*tai sói*) [= the ears of the wolf]

- Sở hữu cách còn được dùng với danh từ chỉ châu lục, quốc gia, thành phố và các từ hoặc cụm từ chỉ thời gian, khoảng cách, tiền bạc, giá trị.

Ví dụ: the Europe's population (*dân số của Châu Âu*)

New York's tallest building (*tòa nhà cao nhất New York*)

two years' time (*thời gian hai năm*)

a mile's distance (*khoảng cách một dặm*)

ten pounds' worth of novel (*quyển tiểu thuyết trị giá 10 bảng*)

- Có thể dùng 's hoặc **of** với danh từ chỉ một tổ chức hoặc một nhóm người.

Ví dụ: The firm's new project/ The new project **of** the firm (*dự án mới của công ty*)

- Có thể dùng 's không có danh từ theo sau khi danh từ chính là các từ *shop, school, house, church, hospital, office, surgery, firm* hoặc danh từ chính đã được đề cập trước đó.

Ví dụ: We had lunch at my aunt's. (*Chúng tôi ăn trưa ở nhà dì tôi.*)

[= At my aunt's house]

This isn't my book. It's my brother's. (*Đây không phải là sách của tôi. Đây là sách của anh tôi.*) [= my brother's book]

- Trong một số trường hợp, nghĩa của câu thay đổi giữa sở hữu cách 's và cấu trúc **of**.

Ví dụ: This is a photograph of Peter's. (*Đây là tấm ảnh của Peter*) [The photograph belongs to Peter.]

This is a photograph of Peter. (*Đây là ảnh của Peter*) [Peter is in the photograph.]

He's Daisy's brother. (*Anh ấy là em trai của Daisy*) [Daisy has probably one brother.]

He's a brother of Daisy's. (*Anh ấy là một trong các em trai của Daisy*) [Daisy has more than one brother.]

- Đôi khi có thể dùng chủ sở hữu như một tính từ, tuy nhiên có những trường hợp không dùng được vì có thể làm đổi nghĩa.

Ví dụ: the legs of the chair = the chair legs (*chân bàn*)

A truck of vegetables (*một xe tải chở đầy rau*) [A truck loaded with vegetables.]

But: A vegetable truck (*xe tải dùng để chở rau*) [A truck used to carry vegetables.]

MULTIPLE CHOICE

Choose a, b, c, or d that best completes the sentence.

1. _____ is the time when family members gather to welcome the first day of the year.
a. New Year Eve b. New Year's Eve c. Eve of New Year d. New-Year-Eve
2. Can you please tell me what _____ is?
a. your phone number b. your phone's number
c. your number of phone d. your phone of number
3. Mary usually has a _____ before going to school.
a. glass' milk b. milk's glass c. milk glass d. glass of milk
4. _____ is very interesting, I guess.
a. The book of the second chapter b. The book second chapter
c. The second chapter book d. The second chapter of the book
5. I cannot remember _____ though I have seen it.
a. the name of the film b. the film of the name
c. the name film d. the name's film
6. _____ is in the parking lot.
a. Peter and Mary new car b. Peter's and Mary's new car
c. Peter and Mary's new car d. Peter's and Mary new car
7. _____ were altogether different.
a. Lee's and Clark's expectations b. Lee and Clark's expectations
c. Lee's and Clark expectations d. Lee and Clark expectations
8. My neighbor is a _____.
a. driver of taxi b. taxi driver c. taxi's driver d. driver's taxi
9. Most people admire _____, and so do I.
a. the accomplishments' Bill Gates b. Bill Gates accomplishments
c. accomplishments of Bill Gates d. Bill Gates's accomplishments
10. In Vietnam, _____ is on November 20th.
a. Day of Teacher b. Day's Teacher c. Teachers Day d. Teachers' Day
11. I like reading _____ better than any other books.
a. fiction's science b. fiction of science c. science of fiction d. science fiction
12. _____ had to be towed last night.
a. My car and Bill b. Bill's and my car c. Bill and my car's d. Bill and my car
13. Do you often go to church on _____?
a. Christmas Eve b. Christmas' Eve c. Christmas's Eve d. Christmas of Eve
14. _____ is a day honoring mothers, celebrated on various days in many places around the world.
a. Mother's Day b. Mother Day c. Day of Mother d. Day Mother's
15. _____ has changed lives of many women.
a. Liberation movement's women b. Liberation movement of women
c. Women liberation movement d. Women's liberation movement

16. My uncle is a _____. He works at a _____.
- a. police's officer / police's station b. police officer / police's station
c. police's officer / police station d. police officer / police station
17. We do not have to wash the clothes any longer. We have just bought a _____.
- a. washing machine b. washing's machine
c. machine washing d. machine's washing
18. _____ to talk makes him unlike any other animal.
- a. Man ability b. Man's ability c. Ability man d. Man of ability
19. _____ are nice. They visit our house sometimes.
- a. My mother friends b. My mother's friends
c. My mother friends' d. My mothers' friend
20. _____ is delayed due to the weather.
- a. Flight of tonight b. Flight's tonight c. Tonight's flight d. Tonight flight
21. _____ is a doctor.
- a. John's and Jane's brother b. John and Jane's brother
c. John and Jane brother d. Jane's brother and John
22. Children make up a large proportion of _____.
- a. the world's population b. the population world
c. the world population's d. population of the world's
23. _____ has been broken.
- a. My mother-in-law's car b. My mother-in-law car
c. My mother's-in-law car d. My mother-in-law of car
24. _____ is the 1st of April, the day on which people traditionally play tricks on each other.
- a. April Fool Day b. April Fool's Day c. April Fool of Day d. Fool Day of April
25. _____ have populations of more than 5 million.
- a. Many the world cities b. Many the world's cities
c. Many of the world's cities d. Many of the world cities
26. A _____ is an area or building where people can leave their cars.
- a. car's park b. car park c. car of park d. park's car
27. Charles Dickens is acclaimed as one of _____.
- a. history's the greatest novelists b. history's greatest novelists
c. history greatest novelists d. history greatest's novelists
28. After _____, Peter felt better and continued working.
- a. break of twenty-minute b. twenty minutes break
c. twenty minute's break d. twenty minutes' break
29. _____ is marked on March 8 every year.
- a. Day International Women b. Day of International Women
c. International Women Day d. International Women's Day
30. _____ is good for our health.
- a. Juice of fruit b. Fruit of juice c. Fruit juice d. Fruit's juice
31. After World War II, the USA has emerged as a _____.
- a. world's power b. world power c. world of power d. power of world
32. I have just received a _____ from my boyfriend.
- a. valentine card b. valentine's card c. valentine of card d. card's valentine

ARTICLES (*Mạo từ*)

I. **Mạo từ không xác định (indefinite articles): A / AN**

Mạo từ không xác định được dùng trước danh từ đếm được số ít. *A* đứng trước danh từ bắt đầu bằng một phụ âm (consonant) hoặc một nguyên âm (vowel) nhưng được phát âm như một phụ âm. *An* được dùng trước danh từ bắt đầu bằng một nguyên âm và âm *h* câm.

Ví dụ: **a** month /mʌnθ/ **an** orange /'ɔrændʒ/
a uniform /'ju:nɪ,fɔ:rm/ **an** umbrella /ʌm'brelə/
a horse /hɔ:rs/ **an** hour /aʊə(r)/

- *A / an* được dùng trong lời phát biểu có tính khái quát.

Ví dụ: **An** orange is rich in vitamin C. (*Cam chứa nhiều vitamin C.*)

- *A / an* được dùng để nói về một chủ thể chưa từng được đề cập trước đó.

Ví dụ: I met **a** beautiful girl on the way to work. (*Trên đường đi làm, tôi gặp một cô gái xinh đẹp.*)

- *A / an* được dùng để giới thiệu nghề nghiệp, chức vụ.

Ví dụ: John is **a** teacher. (*John là giáo viên.*)

- *A / an* được dùng trong một số cụm từ chỉ số lượng nhất định: a lot of (*nhiều*), a great deal of (*nhiều*), a half (*một nửa*), a third (*một phần ba*),...

II. **Mạo từ xác định (definite article): THE**

1. **Mạo từ xác định *the* được dùng:**

- Khi người nói và người nghe biết rõ đối tượng được đề cập hoặc khi danh từ đã được đề cập đến trước đó.

Ví dụ: John has just bought **a** new car. He is very fond of **the** car. (*John vừa mua một chiếc xe mới. Anh ấy thích chiếc xe đó lắm.*)

- Khi đề cập đến khái niệm phổ thông - điều mà mọi người đều biết.

Ví dụ: **The** earth goes round **the** sun. (*Trái đất quay quanh mặt trời.*)

- Khi nói chung về một loài động vật, một loại dụng cụ, máy móc hoặc nhạc khí.

Ví dụ: **The** tiger is in danger of becoming extinct. (*Cọp đang có nguy cơ bị tuyệt chủng.*)

Can you play **the** piano? (*Bạn biết chơi đàn dương cầm không?*)

But: My mother gave me **a** piano on my birthday. (*Mẹ tôi tặng tôi một cây đàn dương cầm vào ngày sinh nhật của tôi.*)

- Trong so sánh nhất.

Ví dụ: He is **the** tallest in my class. (*Anh ấy là người cao nhất lớp tôi.*)

- Đối với danh từ không đếm được, dùng *the* nếu nói đến một đối tượng cụ thể, không dùng *the* nếu nói chung.

Ví dụ: Coffee is **a** popular beverage. (*Cà phê là một loại thức uống được ưa thích.*)

The coffee you make is always delicious. (Cà phê mà bạn pha lúc

đó rất ngon.)

Trade tên đại dương, biển, sông, vịnh, nhóm hồ, dãy núi, quần đảo, sa mạc: the Pacific Ocean (biển Thái Bình Dương), the Black Sea (Biển Đen), the Volga, the Himalayas (Dãy núi Himalaya), the Gulf of Mexico (vịnh Mexico), the Rinf Valley lakes (nhóm hồ Rinf Valley), the Virgin Islands (quần đảo Virgin), the Sahara (sa mạc Sahara)

Trade tên quốc gia: Republic, Kingdom, State, Union, hoặc các tên ở số nhiều: the United States (nước Mỹ), the Philippines (nước Philippine)

Trade tên trường đại học: college + of + tên riêng: the University of Texas (trường đại học Texas) the Oxford University]

Trade tên các cuộc chiến tranh, trừ thế chiến (World War I / World War II), the Civil War (chiến tranh)

Trade tên các hiệp định, điều kiện lịch sử: the Treaty of Geneva (Hiệp định Genève)

Trade tên các tàu biển, máy bay: the Titanic (tàu Titanic)

Trade tên một gia đình hoặc một nhóm nhạc: the Pikes (Gia đình Pike) the Beatles (ban nhạc Beatles)

Thuộc tính từ để chỉ một nhóm đối tượng có cùng thuộc tính: the politicians (nhóm chính trị gia) the good ones (nhóm tốt)

Trade tên các loại sản phẩm hàng, quần rượu, rạp hát, rạp chiếu bóng, sân vận động, phòng học, thư viện, câu lạc bộ và một số các trường đại học: the Ocean Cinema (rạp Ocean Cinema), the National Museum (Bảo tàng Quốc gia), the Vatican (tên thành Vatican)

Trade tên không được dùng:

Trade danh từ có đuôi -er dùng để chỉ người không đếm được với nghĩa chung.

Ví dụ: Computers have great effects on our lives. (Máy vi tính có ảnh hưởng lớn đến đời sống của chúng ta.) [NOT The computers have great effects on our lives.]

Trade tên một cái hồ, một ngọn núi, hoặc một hòn đảo: Lake Superior (hồ Superior), Mount Everest (núi Everest), Hokkaido Island (đảo Hokkaido)

Trade tên các tỉnh, các địa phương, tiểu bang, thành phố và trấn: Hainan (Hải Nam), Hainan (Hải Nam), Europe (châu Âu), France (nước Pháp), Texas (texas), London (thị trấn Luân Đôn)

Trade tên đường phố, công viên, quảng trường: Shirley (đường Shirley), Hyde Park (công viên Hyde), Times Square (quảng trường Times)

Trade tên các môn học, các môn thể thao và các bữa ăn: English (tiếng Anh), tennis (tennis), breakfast (bữa sáng)

Do you like to play tennis? (Bạn có thích môn tennis không?)
What do you have for dinner? (Bạn thường ăn món gì vào bữa tối?)

The dinner we had last night was wonderful. (Bữa tối chúng ta ăn tối hôm qua rất tuyệt.)

Trade một số danh từ chỉ nơi chốn: school, university, college, hospital, cinema, station, restaurant, office, bank, airport, museum, etc.

Trade một số danh từ chỉ nơi chốn: school, university, college, hospital, cinema, station, restaurant, office, bank, airport, museum, etc.

Ví dụ: Peter is a student. He goes to **school** every morning. (*Peter là học sinh. Anh ấy đi học mỗi sáng.*)

But: **The school** is a mile from here. (*Trường học cách đây một dặm.*)
(*school được đề cập như một nơi chốn cụ thể*)

- Trong các cụm từ: *at work, go to work, at home, go home, go to bed, in bed, at sea, go to sea, in town, go into town, watch TV, on TV*

MULTIPLE CHOICE

Choose a, b, c, or d that best completes the sentence.

1. She likes reading _____ books, collecting _____ stamps and going to _____ cinema.
a. the / \emptyset / \emptyset b. \emptyset / \emptyset / the c. \emptyset / the / \emptyset d. \emptyset / the / a
2. My country borders on _____ Pacific Ocean.
a. a b. an c. the d. \emptyset
3. Every day, he gets up at 7 o'clock. He has _____ breakfast and then goes to work. He often comes to work by _____ car.
a. the / the b. a / the c. the / a d. \emptyset / \emptyset
4. My friend is _____ fireman. Let's ask him for _____ help.
a. a / \emptyset b. the / the c. an / the d. \emptyset / the
5. She is _____ MC. She can help us to entertain _____ guests in our wedding.
a. an / the b. a / \emptyset c. the / \emptyset d. a / the
6. _____ more you read _____ smarter you are.
a. \emptyset / the b. The / the c. \emptyset / \emptyset d. The / \emptyset
7. My grandmother gave me _____ piano on my birthday, but what's _____ pity, I cannot play _____ piano.
a. \emptyset / \emptyset / the b. the / the / a c. a / a / the d. the / \emptyset / a
8. Tom said he was _____ employee at _____ fast food restaurant. _____ restaurant is on Boston Street.
a. An / the / A b. \emptyset / the / A c. The / \emptyset / The d. An / a / The
9. She is staying at _____ hotel in a small town in _____ Colorado. _____ town is near Denver.
a. the / \emptyset / \emptyset b. a / \emptyset / The c. the / the / A d. an / the / A
10. She is thinking about attending _____ English course in _____ summer.
a. an / the. b. a / \emptyset c. the / a d. an / a
11. I went to _____ airport at 6:00 AM yesterday. I had to catch _____ flight to _____ Paris.
a. an / the / the b. \emptyset / the / \emptyset c. the / a / \emptyset d. a / a / \emptyset
12. Jim, _____ old friend of mine, used to work in _____ downtown Los Angeles. He had a good job in one of _____ biggest law firms in the city.
a. an / the / \emptyset b. a / the / \emptyset c. the / \emptyset / a d. an / \emptyset / the
13. Lee, my classmate, comes from _____ Philippines. He not only plays _____ football very well but also is good at _____ mathematics.
a. \emptyset / \emptyset / the b. the / a / the c. \emptyset / the / the d. the / \emptyset / \emptyset
14. _____ Mount Everest is in _____ Himalayas. It is _____ tallest mount in the world.
a. \emptyset / an / the b. A / an / a c. The / \emptyset / \emptyset d. \emptyset / the / the

15. Barack Obama is _____ President of _____ United States.
 a. the / the b. a / \emptyset c. the / \emptyset d. the / an
16. _____ atheist does not believe in _____ God.
 a. The / the b. An / \emptyset c. \emptyset / the d. An / a
17. Peter has been ill for a week. He was taken to _____ hospital yesterday. He is in _____ hospital now.
 a. the / a b. \emptyset / \emptyset c. an / an d. the / an
18. He never listens to _____ radio. He prefers watching _____ television.
 a. a / a b. a / the c. the / \emptyset d. \emptyset / the
19. I do not go to _____ theatre very often. I prefer _____ films to _____ plays.
 a. a / the / the b. \emptyset / \emptyset / \emptyset c. the / the / the d. the / \emptyset / \emptyset
20. _____ sun is a ball of fire in the sky that the Earth goes round. It gives us _____ heat and _____ light.
 a. The / an / a b. The / \emptyset / \emptyset c. A / the / the d. \emptyset / a / a
21. _____ university will be built in _____ center of the town.
 a. A / the b. An / the c. The / a d. An / a
22. _____ River Nile is _____ longest river of all.
 a. \emptyset / \emptyset b. A / the c. The / the d. \emptyset / a
23. _____ smog is _____ big problem in _____ big cities.
 a. The / \emptyset / the b. \emptyset / a / \emptyset c. The / \emptyset / \emptyset d. A / the / the
24. _____ Women's Day is on _____ eighth of March.
 a. The / \emptyset b. \emptyset / the c. The / an d. \emptyset / an
25. Many people voluntarily offer care for _____ elderly and _____ disabled.
 a. the / the b. an / a c. an / the d. \emptyset / \emptyset
26. By _____ time we had just left the office, _____ alarm went off.
 a. \emptyset / the b. a / an c. a / the d. the / an
27. I was born in _____ warm family. My parents are both _____ teachers of English. So, I am good at _____ English.
 a. a / \emptyset / \emptyset b. the / the / an c. a / the / the d. the / \emptyset / an
28. He grew up in _____ orphanage in _____ United Kingdom.
 a. the / \emptyset b. an / an c. the / an d. an / the
29. Ian is described as _____ honest and hard-working boy. He is also _____ most social and helpful in our class.
 a. an / \emptyset b. an / the c. the / a d. a / a
30. What _____ make is your car? It is _____ Toyota Altis.
 a. a / \emptyset b. the / \emptyset c. \emptyset / a d. the / the
31. Laura is friendly. She can make _____ friends easily.
 a. a b. an c. the d. \emptyset
32. That car can run at _____ speed of 180 miles _____ hour.
 a. the / an b. a / the c. a / a d. the / a
33. Thomas often goes to _____ school in _____ morning. He is rarely late for _____ school.
 a. \emptyset / the / \emptyset b. the / a / the c. a / the / the d. the / \emptyset / \emptyset

34. _____ most children like _____ sweets.
 a. The / the b. A / the c. \emptyset / \emptyset d. The / \emptyset
35. You can get _____ information you need through _____ Internet.
 a. the / an b. an / the c. the / the d. an / an
36. _____ experience is _____ best teacher.
 a. An / the b. \emptyset / the c. The / a d. \emptyset / a
37. I happened to see Mary on _____ way _____ home.
 a. \emptyset / the b. the / an c. a / the d. the / \emptyset
38. If our body does not have enough _____ cholesterol, we may not be able to survive. On _____ other hand, if the body has too much cholesterol, the excess begins to line the arteries.
 a. the / an b. \emptyset / an c. the / \emptyset d. \emptyset / the
39. They left Hyde Park at _____ midday and went shopping at the commercial center in _____ afternoon.
 a. the / the b. a / an c. the / an d. \emptyset / the
40. _____ River Thames flows through London, _____ capital of England.
 a. The / the b. A / a c. \emptyset / \emptyset d. The / a
41. _____ last night the hurricane was heading into _____ Gulf of Mexico.
 a. The b. \emptyset / the c. The / a d. A / \emptyset
42. In _____ Britain _____ cars run on _____ left.
 a. the / the / \emptyset b. the / \emptyset / a c. \emptyset / \emptyset / the d. \emptyset / the / \emptyset
43. Each of us is _____ unique combination of _____ health and _____ sickness.
 a. a / \emptyset / \emptyset b. an / the / the c. the / a / a d. the / \emptyset / \emptyset
44. _____ plants recycle carbon dioxide and create oxygen, which we need to breathe. _____ most of our food comes from _____ plants.
 a. \emptyset / \emptyset / \emptyset b. The / \emptyset / the c. \emptyset / the / \emptyset d. \emptyset / a / the
45. _____ Taylors decided that they would employ _____ architect to do _____ work.
 a. The / a / the b. A / \emptyset / a c. \emptyset / the / a d. The / an / the
46. On _____ night of 14 April 1912, during its voyage, _____ Titanic hit _____ iceberg, and sank two hours and forty minutes later.
 a. \emptyset / the / the b. the / the / an c. a / \emptyset / the d. a / a / the
47. The largest lake in the United States is _____ Lake Superior, one of _____ Great Lakes, located on the United States - Canada border.
 a. a / \emptyset b. a / a c. \emptyset / the d. the / \emptyset
48. _____ coffee is his favorite drink. He often has _____ coffee before he has _____ breakfast.
 a. \emptyset / a / \emptyset b. The / \emptyset / the c. The / a / the d. \emptyset / the / a
49. Look! _____ school of _____ fish is in the lake.
 a. A / \emptyset b. The / the c. The / a d. A / the
50. She has _____ number of business contacts in _____ Las Vegas.
 a. \emptyset / the b. \emptyset / \emptyset c. the / the d. a / \emptyset

PREPOSITIONS (Giới từ)

Giới từ là từ hay cụm từ thường được dùng trước danh từ hay đại từ để chỉ mối liên hệ giữa các từ này với các thành phần khác trong câu.

I. Các loại giới từ (Kinds of preposition)**1. Giới từ chỉ thời gian ((Prepositions of time)**

- **IN** (*trong, vào*) được dùng để chỉ các buổi trong ngày (ngoại trừ *at night*), tháng, năm, mùa, thập niên, thế kỷ hoặc khoảng thời gian ở tương lai.
Ví dụ: **in** the morning, **in** January, **in** 1990, **in** the summer, **in** the 1990s, **in** the 20th century, **in** the Middle Age, **in** ten minutes
- **IN TIME:** đúng lúc, kịp lúc
Ví dụ: Will you be home **in time** for dinner? (*Anh có về nhà kịp giờ ăn tối không?*)
- **AT** (*vào lúc*) được dùng để chỉ thời điểm hoặc các kỳ nghỉ (toàn bộ những ngày trong kỳ nghỉ)
Ví dụ: **at** 6 o'clock, **at** night, **at** noon, **at** midnight, **at** bedtime, **at** dawn, **at** the weekend, **at** Christmas, **at** New Year, **at** Easter
- **At** còn được dùng trong một số cụm từ chỉ thời gian: *at the moment, at present, at the same time, at once, at that time, at first, at last*
- **ON** (*vào*) được dùng để chỉ ngày trong tuần, ngày tháng trong năm, ngày trong kỳ nghỉ hoặc các buổi trong ngày cụ thể.
Ví dụ: **on** Monday, **on** 5th January, **on** Christmas Day, **on** Monday morning, **on** one's birthday
- **ON TIME:** đúng giờ
Ví dụ: The train arrived right **on time**. (*Tàu đến rất đúng giờ.*)
- **FOR** (*trong*) + khoảng thời gian: for two months, for a long time
- **SINCE** (*từ, từ khi*) + mốc thời gian: since last Monday, since 2002
- **UNTIL / TILL** (*đến, cho đến*): until 5 o'clock, till midnight
- **BEFORE** (*trước, trước khi*) : before lunchtime
- **AFTER** (*sau, sau khi*): after lunchtime
- **DURING** (*trong, suốt*): during World War II
- **BY** (*vào lúc*): by the end of May
- **FROM ... TO** (*từ ... đến*): from morning to noon

2. Giới từ chỉ nơi chốn (Prepositions of place)

- **AT** (*ở, tại*) được dùng để chỉ vị trí tại một điểm.
Ví dụ: **at** home, **at** school, **at** the bus stop, **at** the airport, **at** the office, **at** the cinema, **at** the seaside, **at** the grocer's, **at** the top/ bottom, **at** the beginning/ end, **at** the front/ back
- * Lưu ý: arrive **at** the village/ the airport / the railway station
But: arrive **in** Vietnam/ Ho Chi Minh City

- **IN** (*trong, ở trong*) được dùng để chỉ vị trí trong một diện tích, một không gian; dùng trước tên đường, tên thị trấn, thành phố, quốc gia, miền, phương hướng hoặc dùng với phương tiện đi lại bằng xe hơi (car).

Ví dụ: **in** a box, **in** a small room, **in** the countryside, **in** the world, **in** Oxford Street, **in** London, **in** Vietnam, **in** the east, **in** a car/ taxi

* Lưu ý: **in** a car (*trong xe hơi*) but: **by** car (*bằng xe hơi*)

- **ON** (*trên, ở trên*) được dùng để chỉ vị trí trên bề mặt, số tầng (trong một tòa nhà), trước tên đường (US) hoặc dùng với một số phương tiện đi lại.

Ví dụ: **on** the table, **on** the wall, **on** the ground, **on** the first floor, **on** Albert Street, **on** a bus/ train/ plane/ (motor)bike/ horse, **on** foot

- *On* còn được dùng trong một số cụm từ: **on** the left / right, **on** the farm, **on** the coast/ beach, **on** TV/ radio,...

- **ABOVE / OVER** (*bên trên - không tiếp xúc với bề mặt*)

Ví dụ: Her name comes **above** mine on the list.

(*Tên cô ấy ở trên tên tôi trong danh sách.*)

The sign **over** the door said: "Exit". (*Tấm bảng trên cửa viết "Lối ra".*)

- **UNDER / BELOW** (*ở dưới, dưới*)

Ví dụ: The shoes are **under** the chair. (*Đôi giày ở dưới ghế*)

The temperature has fallen **below** zero. (*Nhiệt độ hạ xuống dưới 0°C*)

- **IN FRONT OF** (*ở phía trước*), **BEHIND** (*ở phía sau*), **IN THE MIDDLE OF** (*ở giữa*)

Ví dụ: I hung my raincoat **in front of/ behind** the door. (*Tôi treo áo mưa trước/ sau cửa.*)

- **NEAR** (*gần*)

Ví dụ: Is there a train station **near** here? (*Có ga xe lửa gần đây không?*)

- **NEXT TO, BY, BESIDE** (*bên cạnh, kế bên*)

Ví dụ: Peter is standing **by** the gate. (*Peter đang đứng bên cổng.*)

- **BETWEEN** (*ở giữa hai người/ vật*), **AMONG** (*ở giữa nhiều người/ vật*)

Ví dụ: Tom is sitting **between** Mary and Peter.

(*Tom ngồi giữa Mary và Peter.*)

Tom is **among** the crowd. (*Tom ở giữa đám đông.*)

- **INSIDE** (*ở bên trong*), **OUTSIDE** (*ở bên ngoài*)

Ví dụ: Luckily, no one was **inside** the building when it collapsed.

(*May mắn là không ai ở bên trong tòa nhà khi nó sập.*)

- **OPPOSITE** (*đối diện*)

Ví dụ: They sat **opposite** each other. (*Họ ngồi đối diện nhau.*)

3. Giới từ chỉ sự chuyển động (Prepositions of movement)

- **TO** (*đến*)

Ví dụ: He goes **to** school by bus. (*Anh ấy đến trường bằng xe buýt.*)

- **FROM ... TO** (*từ ... đến*)

Ví dụ: How far is it **from** New York **to** California?

(*Từ New York đến California bao xa?*)

- **THROUGH** (*xuyên qua*)

Ví dụ: They walked **through** the woods. (*Họ đi xuyên qua khu rừng.*)

- **ACROSS** (*ngang qua*)

Ví dụ: The children ran straight **across** in front of our car.
(*Bọn trẻ chạy băng ngang ngay trước xe chúng tôi.*)

• **ROUND/ AROUND** (*quanh*)

Ví dụ: The Earth moves **round/ around** the Sun.
(*Trái đất xoay quanh mặt trời.*)

• **ALONG** (*dọc theo*)

Ví dụ: We had a walk **along** the river bank. (*Chúng tôi đi dạo dọc bờ sông.*)

• **UP** (*lên*) / **DOWN** (*xuống*)

Ví dụ: We followed her **up** the stairs. (*Chúng tôi theo cô ấy lên lầu.*)

• **TOWARD(S)** (*về phía*)

Ví dụ: Mary stood up and walked **towards** Peter. (*Mary đứng lên và đi về phía Peter.*)

4. Một số giới từ khác

- Giới từ chỉ mục đích hoặc chức năng: **for, to, in order to, so as to** (*để*)
- Giới từ chỉ nguyên nhân: **for, because of, owing to** (*vì, bởi vì*)
- Giới từ chỉ tác nhân, phương tiện hoặc cách thức: **by, with** (*bằng, bởi*)
- Giới từ chỉ cách thức: **by** (*bằng cách*), **with** (*bằng, với*), **without** (*không có*), **in** (*bằng*)
- Giới từ chỉ sự tương tự: **like** (*giống*)

II. Giới từ theo sau danh từ, tính từ và động từ (Prepositions following nouns, adjectives, and verbs)

1. Noun + preposition

FOR

demand for: *nhu cầu về*

reason for: *lý do về*

responsibility for: *trách nhiệm*

talent for: *tài năng*

cure for: *việc chữa trị cho*

need for: *sự cần thiết cho*

reputation for: *sự nổi tiếng*

regret for: *nuối tiếc*

admiration for: *khâm phục*

desire for: *sự mong muốn*

IN

rise in: *phát triển, tăng*

decrease in: *giảm*

experience in: *(có) kinh nghiệm*

delay in: *trì hoãn, hoãn lại*

increase in: *phát triển, tăng*

belief in: *tin*

interest in: *thích, quan tâm*

OF

cause of: *nguyên nhân*

knowledge of: *kiến thức*

opinion of: *ý kiến*

example of: *ví dụ*

advantage / disadvantage of: *thuận lợi / bất lợi*

lack of: *thiếu*

benefit of: *lợi ích*

sense of: *ý thức*

TO

damage to: *sự hư hại (đối với)*

reaction to: *phản ứng*

attitude to: *thái độ*

threat to: *đe dọa*

invitation to: *lời mời*

solution to: *giải pháp*

access to: *phương tiện*

reply to: *trả lời, đáp lại*

ONeffect on: *ảnh hưởng*advice on: *khuyến*influence on: *ảnh hưởng*report on: *báo cáo***WITH**relationship with: *mối quan hệ với*contact with: *sự tiếp xúc với*link with: *liên kết với*connection with: *sự liên quan với*association with: *sự kết giao với*trouble with: *(có) vấn đề với***BETWEEN**difference between: *sự khác biệt*comparison between: *so sánh***2. Adjective + preposition****TO**opposed to: *phản đối*accustomed to: *quen*committed to: *tận tụy*dedicated to: *tận tụy*addicted to: *nghiện*devoted to: *tận tâm***OF**afraid of: *sợ*fond of: *thích*tired of: *chán*guilty of: *có tội*aware/ conscious of: *nhận thức*capable of: *có năng lực*frightened of: *sợ*proud of: *tự hào*scared of: *hoảng sợ*independent of: *độc lập***ABOUT**happy about: *hạnh phúc, vui*anxious/ worried about: *lo lắng*sad/ upset about: *buồn/ thất vọng*excited about: *hào hứng*concerned about: *quan tâm*sorry about: *xin lỗi (về)***FOR**famous for: *nổi tiếng*responsible for: *chịu trách nhiệm*known for: *nổi tiếng*late for: *trễ***IN**interested in: *quan tâm*rich in: *giàu có, phong phú*involved in: *có liên quan*successful in: *thành công***AT**good/ bad at: *giỏi/ dở (về)*surprised/ amazed at: *ngạc nhiên*clever/ skillful at: *khéo léo (về)*excellent at: *xuất sắc (về)***3. Verb + preposition****TO**object to: *phản đối*devote to: *cống hiến*add to: *thêm vào*listen to: *lắng nghe*adapt to: *thích nghi*adjust to: *điều chỉnh***FOR**account for: *giải thích*excuse for: *xin lỗi*search for: *tìm kiếm*apologize for: *xin lỗi*pay for: *trả tiền*

OF

accuse of: *buộc tội*
 consist of: *bao gồm*
 think of: *nghĩ về*

approve of: *tán thành*
 hear of: *nghe tin*

WITH

agree with: *đồng ý*
 provide with: *cung cấp*
 compare with: *so sánh*

argue with: *cãi nhau với*
 communicate with: *giao tiếp*

ABOUT

think about: *nghĩ về*
 complain about: *phàn nàn*
 learn about: *biết*

worry about: *lo lắng*
 forget about: *quên*

AT

arrive at / in: *đến*
 glance at: *liếc*

look at: *nhìn*
 laugh at: *cười*

ON

congratulate on: *chúc mừng*
 comment on: *phê bình*
 insist on: *nài nỉ, đòi*
 rely on: *tin cậy*

concentrate on: *tập trung*
 depend on: *phụ thuộc*
 plan on: *có kế hoạch*

IN

believe in: *tin*
 succeed in: *thành công*

participate in: *tham gia*

MULTIPLE CHOICE

Choose a, b, c, or d that best completes the sentence.

- Peter promised to come here _____ 9 o'clock _____ Monday morning.
 a. within / at b. about / upon c. at / on d. for / in
- John was born _____ March 1st, 2000. He was to school _____ 2006 when he was _____ the age of six.
 a. at / on / about b. on / in / at c. from / at / about d. in / for / on
- My father often goes to work early _____ the morning and returns home _____ midday.
 a. in / at b. on / for c. at / about d. up / to
- We will have completed our work _____ next month, and then we will have an interesting vacation _____ summer
 a. since / on b. for / of c. on / at d. by / in
- I often busy _____ weekdays and free _____ the weekend.
 a. at / for b. in / on c. during / within d. on / at
- Peter has worked for our company _____ 1999, _____ nearly ten years. _____ the time, he has been working very hard.
 a. since / for / During b. for / in / At
 c. on / from / For d. through / about / On

7. Mary lives _____ 153 Oxford Street in London. Her work office is _____ the tenth floor of a building near her house. Mary often says she prefers living _____ the countryside and working _____ the farm.
a. inside / at / on / by b. in / from / by / in c. at / on / in / on d. on / in / at / for
8. Daisy is standing _____ the table. She is opening the drawer _____ which she keeps her savings.
a. next to / over b. by / in c. on / from d. through / into
9. I am often _____ school in the morning and do research or read books _____ the school library. _____ night, I stay home and prepare for my lessons.
a. at / at / At b. in / from / On c. to / through / In d. out / in / For
10. The victim was _____ a shop when he was attacked and the police were _____ the spot immediately.
a. under / to b. between / in c. above / at d. outside / on
11. Look! Peter is _____ the last group. He has never won a race. He is often _____ the others.
a. among / behind b. between / under c. in / above d. at / through
12. After working _____ a long time, we relaxed _____ the shade _____ the branches.
a. to / from / of b. off / for / up c. on / over / under d. for / in / beneath
13. If you want to reach that shelf you had better stand _____ the chair which is _____ the table.
a. among / by b. beneath / in c. on / next to d. under / above
14. Peter is standing _____ the bus stop to wait for the bus. He often arrives at the office _____ time.
a. from / at b. at / on c. to / in d. by / for
15. He made his escape by jumping _____ a window and getting _____ a waiting car.
a. on / up b. out of / into c. over / out d. through / by
16. To get to the Marketing Department, you have to go _____ those stairs and then walk _____ the corridor _____ the end.
a. up / along / to b. upon / through / in c. in / over / through d. by / up / for
17. You can read such advertisements _____ the newspaper, or watch them _____ TV.
a. in / on b. at / from c. on / in d. through / at
18. She took the key _____ her pocket and put it _____ the lock. She was so astonished to find that the door unlocked. Someone had broken into the house.
a. up / away b. from / by c. away / on d. out of / into
19. Harry comes to work _____ car but I prefer to come _____ foot, although _____ times I am late _____ work.
a. on / by / from / at b. with / through / on / in
c. by / on / at / for d. in / with / in / on
20. I do not like the people who live in the apartment _____ mine. They sometimes make noise and have a quarrel _____ us.
a. over / for b. upon / about c. above / with d. up / at
21. My relationship with Mary is wonderful. I have still been _____ contact _____ her since we left high school. Although sometimes her ideas are different _____ mine, we are best friends.
a. at / for / in b. in / with / from c. on / about / up d. of / to / with

22. I have a reason _____ doing that although my parents do not approve _____ my work. I think they may agree _____ me when I give an explanation to them.
 a. for / of / with b. of / at / about c. on / about / upon d. at / off / for
23. When we arrived _____ the village, the only hotel in the area was still _____ construction so we had to spend the night in a small inn.
 a. at / under b. for / of c. toward / in d. on / over
24. She is the cause _____ all his problems. She often makes him be worried _____ what she has done.
 a. from / over b. to / at c. for / on d. of / about
25. He provided the solution _____ our financial situation. We were grateful _____ him _____ being so kind.
 a. at / with / in b. in / on / with c. of / by / on d. to / to / for
26. John is the person standing _____ the window, next to the woman _____ the long blonde hair.
 a. on / for b. at / by c. through / in d. beside / with
27. Unfortunately, he was hopeless _____ being _____ time. He was reprimanded by a teacher _____ being late.
 a. through / in / of b. at / on / for c. off / at / with d. in / through / from
28. I'm really angry _____ John for his total lack _____ responsibility _____ work.
 a. with / of / for b. at / in / to c. in / from / of d. about / off / in
29. I quite sympathize _____ you for your losses _____ the stock market!
 a. with / on b. for / off c. over / in d. at / upon
30. I thought you had paid _____ the rent _____ the end of last year.
 a. on / during b. for / until c. at / in d. to / at
31. - Do you get tired _____ answering the same questions every day?
 - No, I am interested _____ my work.
 a. through / about b. of / in c. from / on d. for / to
32. Television is an effective means _____ communication. People, young and old alike, are fond _____ watching TV _____ their free time.
 a. at / on / through b. in / at / upon c. of / of / in d. for / on / during
33. She retired early _____ account _____ ill health. Now, she lives _____ retirement.
 a. in / off / upon b. for / from / on c. on / of / in d. with / in / during
34. John said that he was sorry _____ shouting _____ you.
 a. in / with b. for / at c. on / off d. about / over
35. At first I was very angry _____ his behaviors but later when he apologized _____ doing like that I forgave him.
 a. in / from b. at / for c. on / in d. of / with
36. I can go _____ my own. You needn't come _____ me.
 a. on / with b. though / about c. up / over d. for / to
37. My friend and I always keep _____ touch by mail. When I get a letter, I usually write _____ immediately.
 a. off / upon b. on / about c. in / back d. by / to
38. _____ my opinion, Peter is not really clever _____ solving problems.
 a. To / against b. About / in c. On / of d. In / at

39. There are many different ways _____ comparing the economy of one nation _____ that of another.
a. from / on b. to / of c. for / on d. of / with
40. They accused John _____ robbing the bank. The court sentenced him _____ 5 years _____ jail.
a. about / of / on b. for / through / at c. of / to / in d. at / during / for
41. He took advantage _____ his connections at the company.
a. of b. in c. for d. with
42. He specializes _____ technical translation. He can translate the instructions _____ Japanese.
a. in / into b. at / to c. for / against d. with / out
43. Many of gorillas are _____ danger _____ dying out. They are working to save mountain gorillas _____ extinction.
a. for / away / with b. in / of / from c. on / through / off d. at / for / through
44. - Do you object _____ my smoking?
- You had better stop smoking. It is bad _____ your health.
a. off / in b. from / on c. to / for d. against / at
45. You should involve your children _____ physical activities and provide them _____ chances to take part in sport games.
a. of / for b. in / with c. on / toward d. inside / in
46. Peter reminded me _____ Tom, whom I got acquainted _____ three years ago. I have not met him again _____ that time.
a. of / with / since b. about / to / during c. on / about / from d. with / at / in
47. He was listening _____ the announcements broadcast _____ the radio.
a. about / over b. from / through c. for / in d. to / on
48. John got _____ the car to wait _____ Daisy, whom he had fallen in love _____ for two years.
a. into / about / of b. through / to / for c. up / on / to d. out of / for / with
49. She had succeeded _____ persuading Derek _____ the feasibility of the project.
a. from / for b. with / upon c. in / of d. at / from
50. Your attitude _____ Italian dressing is not really proper. As a rule, Italians are very conscious _____ their dress and have a great sense _____ style.
a. on / over / toward b. to / of / of c. with / at / in d. upon / to / for

MODULE 6

PHRASAL VERBS (Cụm động từ)

Cụm động từ (phrasal verbs) là một động từ kết hợp với giới từ, trạng từ hoặc đôi khi cả hai để tạo thành một động từ mới thường có nghĩa khác với động từ chính.

Ví dụ: run into (*gặp, va phải*), take off (*cởi ra*), look forward to (*mong chờ*)

I **ran into** (= meet) my teacher at the movies last night.

(Tôi gặp thầy giáo ở rạp chiếu phim tối hôm qua.)

- Cụm động từ có thể là nội động từ (intransitive) hoặc ngoại động từ (transitive). Một số cụm động từ có thể được dùng cả hai cách.

Ví dụ: He suddenly **showed up**. (*Anh ấy bỗng nhiên xuất hiện.*) [I]

I myself **made up** the story. (*Chính tôi đã bịa ra câu chuyện.*) [T]

- Một số cụm động từ có tân ngữ có thể tách rời động từ và trạng từ/ giới từ, tân ngữ được đặt trước hoặc sau trạng từ/ giới từ.

Ví dụ: She **took her coat off**. or: She **took off** her coat.

(*Cô ấy cởi áo khoác ra.*)

Nhưng đại từ làm tân ngữ luôn đứng trước trạng từ/ giới từ.

Ví dụ: She **took it off**. (NOT ~~She took off it.~~)

- Một số cụm động từ không thể tách rời; tân ngữ luôn đứng sau trạng từ/ giới từ.

Ví dụ: She stayed at home to **look after her children**. (*Cô ấy ở nhà chăm sóc con cái.*)

[NOT ~~She stayed at home to look her children after.~~]

• Một số cụm động từ thông dụng

break down = stop working

break in/ into = get into (a building) illegally

break off = stop doing sth

break up = separate

bring back = remember

bring in = introduce

call off = cancel

call back = return a phone call

call in/ on = visit

carry on = continue

carry out = execute

come across = find sth or meet sb by chance

come out = disappear

cheer up = make happy

cross out = delete

cut out = quit

cut off = stop (a supply, a relationship)

do up = fasten

drop in = visit

finish off = complete

get on = deal with; continue

get over = overcome

get up = wake up; get out of bed

give off = produce heat, light, a smell
or a gas

go back = return

go on = continue

go out = leave

go off = ring, explode

go up = rise; increase

give up = quit; surrender

hang up = end (a telephone conversation)

keep on = continue

keep off = not eat, drink, or take sth bad

keep out = prevent entry

keep up with = maintain progress with

leave out = omit

let sb down = make sb disappointed

look after = take care of

look back = remember sth that
happened in the past

look for = search for, seek

look into = investigate

look over = to examine

look up = find information

pass out = distribute; become unconscious

point out = show

put out = extinguish (a fire, cigarette,
or candle)

stand for = represent

shut up = be quiet

slow down = reduce speed

use up = use completely

take off = leave; remove sth that you
are wearing

take up = start doing sth

take over = start doing, assume responsibility

turn on/ off = switch on/ off

turn up/ down = increase/ reduce the amount of sound, heat etc.

talk over = discuss

wear off = gradually disappear

wear out = become damaged

MULTIPLE CHOICE

Choose a, b, c, or d that best completes the sentence.

- Look _____! There is a car coming.
- The driver should slow _____ when he is coming round the bend.
a. up / in b. out / down c. for / on d. into / off
- Could you please turn _____ the stereo? The music is interesting.
a. up b. off c. round d. to
- How can you put _____ with your brother? He is talkative and unreliable.
a. on b. up c. off d. at
- I think I should take _____ golf this year. I will try my best to go _____ with my plan.
a. of / to b. from / for c. up / ahead d. on / off
- She had to hang _____ because someone else wanted to use the phone.
a. off b. in c. for d. up
- I must go _____ a diet. I put _____ a lot of weight while I was on vacation.
a. through / off b. round / away c. for / with d. on / on
- What do the initials USA stand _____?
a. up b. on c. for d. with
- Livy's getting _____ very well in Russian. She takes _____ practicing the language every day.
a. up / off b. on / to c. through / in d. in / up
- The airhostess asked the passengers to do _____ the seat-belt before the plane took _____.
a. up / off b. on / away c. over / in d. for / up
- The fireworks went _____ in all their colors and lit _____ the sky.
a. off / up b. upon / beyond c. among / in d. up / of
- So many people were absent that we had to call _____ the meeting.
a. on b. with c. off d. in
- He came _____ some of his old love letters in his wife's drawer.
a. forward b. along c. across d. up
- I had to stand _____ for the boss while she went _____.
a. of / round b. up / over c. in / away d. on / ahead
- Don't worry, the pain should wear _____ fairly soon. You will get _____ your illness.
a. on / through b. off / over c. for / with d. in / for
- I have to send _____ a tow truck because my car broke _____.
a. for / down b. under / of c. up / into d. in / off

16. I do not remember where I _____ her number down; it is on a little piece of paper somewhere.
 a. got b. wrote c. kept d. sat
17. The boy _____ off his jacket and _____ it away.
 a. sent / took b. hung / handed c. got / showed d. took / put
18. I managed to _____ to the diet and _____ off sweet foods.
 a. take / eat b. write / call c. go / look d. stick / keep
19. Whenever I lit a cigarette, my wife said, "____ it out! You cannot smoke in the house."
 a. put b. turn c. light d. hand
20. My mother often complains, "You're so messy. I always have to ____ up after you."
 a. put b. go c. clean d. keep
21. _____ rid of those old shoes. They are _____ out.
 a. Take / turning b. Call / putting c. Get / wearing d. Go / taking
22. If you _____ down something, you try to make people believe that it is not particularly important.
 a. play b. go c. cut d. call
23. Did you have to _____ through an entrance examination?
 a. hope b. get c. take d. hold
24. He _____ upon himself the responsibility for protecting her.
 a. looked b. took c. cleaned d. handed
25. I was late for work because my alarm clock did not _____ off.
 a. turn b. put c. send d. go
26. The stain will _____ out if you wash it.
 a. come b. keep c. shake d. turn
27. You made me disappointed. I would like you did not ____ me down any more.
 a. hold b. slow c. let d. go
28. I don't know why their marriage is _____ up. They end in divorce.
 a. approving b. going c. breaking d. putting
29. After two hours of hard work, we decided to ____ off for a little cup of coffee.
 a. get b. look c. put d. break
30. When Mary sees blood, she _____ out, so she cannot _____ up medicine.
 a. keeps / get b. passes / take c. holds / show d. walks / turn

Choose a, b, c, or d that has the closest meaning to the underlined part.

31. Let's put off that meeting to next Monday.
 a. postpone b. arrange c. start d. decide
32. They turned down my suggestion, which made me upset.
 a. refused b. agreed c. accepted d. supposed
33. I ran into my cousin, Peter, when I was on the way to school yesterday.
 a. phoned b. met c. called d. waved
34. Peter went through the test paper and crossed out two wrong answers.
 a. handed / chose b. dropped / discovered
 c. finished / wrote d. read carefully / deleted
35. The party kicks off at 8 o'clock.
 a. prepares b. cancels c. ends d. starts

36. What time will the train get in?
 a. brake b. run c. arrive d. leave
37. I sometimes drop off on the sofa.
 a. sleep b. drink c. eat d. buy
38. Professor Pike promised to talk over the exam after he returned the results.
 a. discuss b. omit c. end d. begin
39. My family was able to get by on very little money when I was young.
 a. survive b. depend c. spend d. earn
40. Mr. Pike was very good at making up stories for his children.
 a. telling b. reading c. inventing d. remembering
41. I can put you up at my flat if you like.
 a. give you a lift to home b. give you somewhere to sleep
 c. give you a meal d. give you some work to do
42. My boss is always picking on me these days.
 a. asking me to do things b. helping me
 c. criticizing me d. playing games with me
43. None of these countries has found a way to get around the problem of inflation.
 a. create b. invent c. cause d. overcome
44. I have been snowed under at work recently.
 a. The weather has been very bad b. I have been very busy with my work
 c. It has been very cold in the office d. My boss has been causing problems
45. When he came to, his wallet and bike were nowhere to be found.
 a. arrived home b. climbed the stairs
 c. went to work d. recover consciousness
46. Carlos hung up on his sister because he was so tired of listening to her whining on the phone.
 a. visited b. ended a phone call c. came to see d. reprimanded
47. The company has been taking on new staff, including part-time workers.
 a. sacking b. limiting c. employing d. dismissing
48. Terri was able to catch on to the most complex problems in calculus before anyone else.
 a. realize b. change c. invent d. submit
49. Let me explain to you how the things came about.
 a. ended b. happened c. blew d. are solved
50. We are becoming older and older as years go by.
 a. stop b. change c. come d. pass

MODULE 7

CONJUNCTIONS (*Liên từ*)

Liên từ (conjunction) là từ được dùng để nối các từ, cụm từ, mệnh đề hoặc câu. Có hai loại liên từ:

1. **Liên từ kết hợp (coordinating conjunctions)** nối từ, cụm từ hoặc mệnh đề độc lập có cùng chức năng ngữ pháp: and (và), but (nhưng), or (hoặc là), nor (cũng không), so (vì vậy), yet (tuy nhiên), for (vì)

Ví dụ: Tom **and** Mary are my friends. (Tom và Mary là bạn của tôi.)

James likes tea, **but** Mary likes coffee.

(James thích trà nhưng Mary thích cà phê.)

Is the baby male **or** female? (Đứa bé là con trai hay con gái.)

He cannot see, **nor** can he hear.

(Anh ấy không thấy, cũng không thể nghe.)

There is no food left, **so** I have to go shopping.

(Không còn thức ăn nên tôi phải đi mua.)

The new method is simple, **yet** effective.

(Phương pháp mới đơn giản, nhưng hiệu quả.)

I told her to leave, **for** I was very tired.

(Tôi bảo cô ta đi vì tôi rất mệt.)

- Liên từ tương quan (correlative conjunctions): both . . . and (cả ... và), not only . . . but also (không những ... mà còn), either . . . or (hoặc ... hoặc), neither . . . nor (không ... cũng không), whether . . . or (có ... hay)

Ví dụ: **Both** Tom **and** John are my best friends.

(Cả Tom và John đều là bạn tốt của tôi.)

He can **not only** play the piano **but also** sing well.

(Anh ấy không những biết chơi đàn dương cầm mà còn hát rất hay.)

Either you **or** I will come to help him.

(Hoặc bạn hoặc tôi sẽ đến giúp anh ấy.)

Peter **neither** spoke **nor** did anything.

(Peter không nói cũng không làm gì cả.)

I have not decided **whether** to travel aboard **or** buy a new car.

(Tôi chưa quyết định là đi du lịch nước ngoài hay mua xe hơi mới.)

- Một số trạng từ (conjunctive adverbs) được dùng như một từ nối để nối hai mệnh đề hoặc câu độc lập: hence (do đó), however (tuy nhiên), furthermore (hơn nữa), moreover (hơn nữa), therefore (vì vậy), nevertheless (tuy nhiên), meanwhile (trong khi đó), otherwise (nếu không thì), consequently (vì vậy, cho nên)

Ví dụ: I had better write it down, **otherwise** I will forget it.

(Tôi nên viết lại, nếu không tôi sẽ quên.)

The whole report is badly written. **Moreover**, it is inaccurate.

(Bản báo cáo viết rất tệ. Hơn thế nữa nó không chính xác.)

2. **Liên từ phụ thuộc (subordinating conjunctions)** nối mệnh đề phụ (subordinate clause) với mệnh đề chính (main clause): after, before, since, when, whenever, while, until, till, as, where, wherever, because, so that, in order that, although, though, even though, even if, if, unless, in case, provided / providing that, supposed/ supposing that, as if, as though, that. (Xem phần Adverb clauses, That clauses và Conditional sentences)

Ví dụ: I'll phone you **when** I arrive. (Khi đến nơi tôi sẽ gọi cho anh.)

He told me **that** he loved me. (Anh ấy nói rằng anh ấy yêu tôi.)

MULTIPLE CHOICE

Choose a, b, c, or d that best completes the sentence.

1. Bill wants to enter Oxford University _____ he has some trouble meeting the academic requirements.
a. and b. but c. as d. so
2. John usually spent his summer studying basic math, writing, _____ reading comprehension.
a. nor b. but c. as d. and
3. I do not like football, _____ my brother can play football very well.
a. as b. and c. while d. or
4. It is hard to say whether Hemingway _____ Fitzgerald is the more interesting cultural icon of his day.
a. or b. and c. not d. but
5. Hartford is a rich city, _____ suffers from many symptoms of urban blight.
a. yet b. however c. so d. and
6. You need to work harder; _____, you'll get fired.
a. otherwise b. moreover c. instead d. however
7. There were not enough beds _____ I had to sleep on the floor.
a. while b. nor c. but d. so
8. You can study hard for this exam _____ you can fail.
a. however b. yet c. and d. or
9. He is a very weak president; _____, most people support him.
a. otherwise b. therefore c. nevertheless d. but
10. There was no alcohol in the flat, _____ any tobacco.
a. or b. nor c. but d. and
11. This is a useful rule, _____ difficult to remember.
a. so b. but c. and d. or
12. The first two services are free, _____ the third costs £35.00.
a. while b. when c. since d. as
13. _____ knowledge can be acquired from books, skills must be learned through practice.
a. Since b. And c. But d. Whereas
14. She could not speak, _____ could she understand anything we said.
a. when b. as c. or d. nor
15. She not only works hard _____ has a good relationship with all her workmates.
a. since b. as c. but also d. so
16. Whether you win this race _____ lose it doesn't matter as long as you do your best.
a. nor b. but c. or d. and
17. We were sitting, _____ I remember, in a riverside restaurant.
a. whereas b. as c. and d. yet
18. We wanted to go to the beach; _____, it started to rain and we stayed at home.
a. however b. moreover c. yet d. consequently
19. Forgive my asking, _____ you're not very happy, are you?
a. but b. and c. so d. as

20. Wear your clothes _____ you want.
 a. but b. so c. and d. however
21. Cars have become much more complicated. _____, mechanics need more training than in the past.
 a. Therefore b. So that c. Because d. For
22. He did not slow down _____ drove even faster.
 a. nor b. and c. but d. because
23. Doctors' salaries have risen substantially, _____ nurses' pay actually has not.
 a. or b. so c. and d. whereas
24. I have not been asked to resign, _____ do I intend to do so.
 a. or b. nor c. as d. since
25. He was wearing glasses _____ no one could see his face clearly.
 a. and b. so as c. but also d. so that
26. There was snow everywhere, _____ the shape of things was difficult to identify.
 a. so b. however c. as d. or
27. I couldn't use the pay phone, _____ I didn't have any coins with me.
 a. yet b. despite c. for d. even though
28. I have earned my own living _____ I was seven, doing all kinds of jobs.
 a. whereas b. while c. since d. whenever
29. My present job is badly paid _____ I think I will look for another better one.
 a. or b. so c. nor d. however
30. Write the answers down _____ you do not forget them.
 a. than b. as c. if d. so that
31. _____ he was the most prominent candidate, he was not chosen.
 a. Though b. Because c. As d. Since
32. Neither Mrs. Rose _____ Mrs. Wood was available for conference yesterday.
 a. nor b. or c. but d. so
33. We do not know _____ he will come.
 a. than b. but c. when d. whereas
34. My sister broke her leg in two places. _____, she had to wear a cast and use crutches for three months
 a. Nevertheless b. Consequently c. For that d. Moreover
35. I do not know _____ everybody will approve of my suggestions or not.
 a. only if b. when c. if d. whether
36. The visitors complained about the heat, _____ they continued to play golf.
 a. yet b. and c. because d. since
37. The lecture was very boring _____ I had left the hall before it finished.
 a. because b. but c. so d. so that
38. Either my friend _____ I am going to help you with the work.
 a. and b. or c. nor d. yet
39. Let's ask our teacher how to solve this problem _____ we can't agree on the answer.
 a. so b. though c. for d. since
40. John thought he had a good chance to get the job, _____ his father was the manager's friend.
 a. since b. though c. as d. for

41. Do it _____ you want.
a. however b. so c. so that d. for
42. The country is famous for the beauty of its landscape _____ the hospitality of its people.
a. thus b. since c. otherwise d. and
43. Did you go out _____ stay at home?
a. and b. or c. as d. so that
44. They tried hard _____ did not succeed.
a. but b. so c. while d. whereas
45. They got lost _____ they forgot to take the map with them.
a. when b. and c. because d. or
46. I did not see it, _____ did they.
a. and b. nor c. so d. but
47. _____ we miss the last bus, we will walk home.
a. Wherever b. When c. As if d. If
48. He kept reading _____ he fell asleep.
a. until b. as c. for d. and
49. The police searched the region carefully _____ they found nothing.
a. whereas b. nor c. but d. as if
50. We open the window _____ fresh air could blow into the room.
a. for b. so that c. not only d. because

MODULE 8

SUBJECT - VERB AGREEMENT

(Sự tương hợp giữa chủ từ và động từ)

1. Singular subject + Singular verb

Plural subject + Plural verb

Ví dụ: Tom **is** very nice. (Tom rất tử tế.)

Milk **is** good for our health. (Sữa tốt cho sức khỏe.)

The students **are** studying English. (Các sinh viên đang học tiếng Anh)

2. Noun + **and** + Noun + Plural verb (khi các danh từ đề cập đến người/ vật khác nhau)

Noun + **and** + Noun + Singular verb (khi các danh từ đề cập đến cùng một người/ vật)

Ví dụ: The manager and the secretary **have** come.

(Giám đốc và thư ký đã đến.)

Bread and eggs **is** my favourite dish.

(Bánh mì trứng là món tôi thích nhất.)

3. Every/ Each + Singular noun + **and** + Every / Each + Singular noun + Singular verb

Ví dụ: Every teacher and every student **has** their own work.

(Mỗi giáo viên và mỗi sinh viên đều có công việc riêng của mình.)

4. **Noun₁ + with/ along with/ together with/ in addition to/ as well as/ accompanied by + Noun₂ + Verb (noun₁)**
Ví dụ: The students in addition to the teacher **are** all devoted to the research.
 (Các sinh viên và thầy giáo của họ đều hết lòng với việc nghiên cứu.)
5. **Noun₁ + or/ nor + Noun₂ + Verb (noun₂)**
 Either + Noun₁ + or + Noun₂ + Verb (noun₂)
 Neither nor
 Not only but also
Ví dụ: Not only Julie but also all of the grandchildren **want** to visit their grandparents.
 (Không những Julie mà mấy đứa cháu cũng muốn đến thăm ông bà.)
 Either you or I **am** right. (Cả anh và tôi đều đúng.)
6. **Each / Every / One + Singular Noun + Singular verb**
Neither / Either + Of + Plural Noun + Singular verb
Ví dụ: Every seat **has** a number. (Mỗi ghế đều có số.)
 Neither of my sisters **likes** films. (Không người chị nào của tôi thích phim ảnh.)
7. **Everyone/ Everything/ Someone/ Something/ Anyone/ Anything/ Nobody/ Nothing/... + Singular verb**
Ví dụ: Nobody **is** here. (Không ai ở đây.)
8. **The number of + Plural noun + Singular verb**
A number of + Plural noun + Plural verb
Ví dụ: The number of students in my class **is** thirty.
 (Số học sinh trong lớp tôi là 30.)
 A number of my students **are** keen on learning English.
 (Một số học sinh trong lớp tôi thích học tiếng Anh.)
9. **All/ Some/ Plenty/ None/ Half** > + **OF** < + **Singular Noun + Singular Verb**
Most/ A lot/ Percentage > + **OF** < + **Plural Noun + Plural Verb**
Ví dụ: One third of the population **is** unemployed.
 (Một phần ba dân số bị thất nghiệp.)
 One third of the villagers **are** unemployed.
 (Một phần ba dân làng bị thất nghiệp.)
10. **There + BE + Noun**
Ví dụ: There **are** two sides to every problem. (Mọi vấn đề đều có hai mặt.)
 There **is** a picture on the wall. (Có một bức tranh trên tường.)
11. **Collective Noun + Singular verb (xem như một đơn vị)**
 (family, team, staff,...) **Plural verb (chỉ từng cá nhân tạo nên tập thể)**
Ví dụ: Our company **has** debated these questions carefully.
 (Công ty của chúng tôi thảo luận vấn đề rất cẩn thận.)
 The company **lead** very different lives in private.
 (Mỗi người ở công ty của chúng tôi có cuộc sống riêng tư khác nhau.)
12. **People/ Police/ Cattle/ Poultry/ The + adjective + Plural verb**

Ví dụ: The police **are** searching to find the thieves.

(Cảnh sát đang lục soát tìm những tên trộm.)

The poor **need** help. (Người nghèo cần được giúp đỡ.)

13. Một số danh từ có dạng số nhiều nhưng có nghĩa số ít: **maths, physics, economics, linguistics,.../ measles, mumps, rickets,.../ billiards, darts,.../ the Philippines, the United States,.../ news + Singular verb**

Ví dụ: Mathematics **is** divided into branches. (Toán học được chia làm nhiều ngành.)

Rickets **is** common in some developing countries.

(Bệnh còi xương phổ biến ở một số nước đang phát triển.)

14. **Time** (thời gian) / **Money** (tiền) / **Distance** (khoảng cách) / **Measurement** (đo lường) / **Titles** (tựa đề) + **Singular verb**

Ví dụ: "To build a fire" **was** written by Jack London.

(Tác phẩm "To build a fire" do Jack London viết.)

Ten dollars **is** a high price to pay. (10 dollars là một giá cao.)

Five years **is** the maximum sentence of that offence.

(5 năm là mức án cao nhất cho tội đó.)

15. Động từ số ít (singular verb) thường được dùng sau số thập phân, phân số và cụm từ chỉ số lượng và sự đo lường.

Ví dụ: Three quarters of a ton **is** too much. (3/4 tấn là quá nhiều.)

Nhưng động từ số nhiều (plural verb) được dùng khi nói về số lượng người hoặc vật.

Ví dụ: A third of the students **are** from abroad.

(1/3 số học sinh đến từ các nước khác.)

MULTIPLE CHOICE

Choose a, b, c, or d that best completes the sentence.

- Learning foreign languages _____ a lot of time.
a. require b. requires c. have required d. are requiring
- Meeting you _____ a good chance.
a. is b. are c. were d. have been
- Women _____ not well-treated in former days.
a. is b. are c. were d. was
- Beautiful white teeth _____ to make our smile more attractive.
a. help b. helps c. is helping d. was helping
- Children _____ good care from their parents.
a. need b. needs c. are needing d. is needing
- Look! The cattle _____ on the meadow.
a. has grazed b. have grazed c. is grazing d. are grazing
- Many people claim that health _____ more important than wealth.
a. are b. is c. have been d. has been
- The fishing boat sank but luckily all the crew _____ able to save themselves.
a. have been b. is c. are d. were

9. Wealth _____ to the possession of a large amount of money, property, or other valuable things.
 a. refer b. are referring c. is referring d. refers
10. The news from the destroyed villages _____ so bad.
 a. was b. were c. are d. have been
11. Measles _____ a dangerous disease for pregnant women.
 a. have b. are c. is d. were
12. Rickets _____ popular among some countries in Africa.
 a. is b. are c. were d. have been
13. Of all high school courses, mathematics _____ to be difficult.
 a. consider b. have considered c. are considered d. is considered
14. Economics _____ at high school.
 a. is not taught b. are not taught c. do not teach d. does not teach
15. John's information _____ us a lot.
 a. help b. has helped c. have helped d. were helping
16. The furniture _____ so expensive that we had to save for three months to buy it.
 a. are b. is c. was d. were
17. The bad news _____ her so shocked that she falls unconscious.
 a. make b. has made c. have made d. are making
18. The Philippines _____ 7,107 islands in the western Pacific Ocean.
 a. comprises b. comprise c. is comprising d. are comprising
19. The Netherlands _____ a parliamentary democratic constitutional monarchy, located in Western Europe.
 a. is b. are c. has been d. have been
20. There _____ a book, a pen, and three pencils on the table.
 a. is b. are c. were d. has
21. There _____ three pencils, a pen, and a book on the table.
 a. is b. are c. was d. have
22. Four times four divided by two _____ eight.
 a. makes b. make c. have made d. are making
23. Two-fifths of the troops _____ in the battle last year.
 a. have lost b. loses c. was lost d. were lost
24. Two-fifths of the vineyard _____ by fire last night.
 a. destroys b. destroy c. was destroyed d. were destroyed
25. Forty percent of the students _____ in favor of changing the policy.
 a. is b. are c. has been d. was
26. The number of students attending the lecture yesterday _____ one hundred and twenty-two.
 a. is b. are c. was d. were
27. Four years _____ a required time for a student to complete his university education.
 a. is b. are c. has been d. were
28. One thousand dollars _____ really a large sum of money for me.
 a. is b. are c. were d. have been
29. The secretary and cashier of our club _____ Ms. Young.
 a. is b. are c. were d. have been

30. Each student and each teacher _____ ready for the school activities.
a. are b. is c. have been d. were
31. Each and every student and instructor in this institute _____ for a new facility by next year.
a. hope b. hopes c. are hoping d. were hoped
32. Rice and chicken, my favorite dish, _____ by my mother.
a. has usually cooked b. have usually been cooked
c. are usually cooked d. is usually cooked
33. The members and the chairman _____ together recently.
a. meets b. are just meeting c. have just met d. has just met
34. My sisters and Susan _____ friends since they met together at the party.
a. have become b. has become c. is becoming d. comes
35. My friends and my mother _____ each other.
a. not likes b. does not like c. is not liking d. do not like
36. Your pair of trousers _____ in the closet.
a. is b. are c. were d. have been
37. I think the behaviors of that young man _____ not acceptable.
a. is b. are c. was d. has been
38. The way of life in small villages far from big cities _____ mostly quiet because there _____ few people.
a. is / is b. are / are c. is / are d. are / is
39. Either my father or my brothers _____ the house.
a. sells b. has sold c. are going to sell d. is selling
40. Neither the employees nor the boss _____ the solution.
a. find b. have found c. has found d. are finding
41. John or you _____ our grandfather next weekend.
a. visits b. is going to visit c. are going to visit d. visited
42. Not only the students but also their instructor _____ to the principal's office.
a. is calling b. call c. have been called d. has been called
43. Michael, along with his brothers and support team, _____ many major cities around the world every year.
a. visits b. visit c. is visiting d. are visiting
44. Kara, together with her teammates, _____ hands with opponents on the basketball court.
a. shake b. is shaking c. are shaking d. have shaken
45. Peter, as well as my two brothers, _____ football in the school yard every afternoon.
a. often plays b. often play c. plays often d. have often played
46. Most of the milk _____ bad except three bottles of milk which _____ still in the refrigerator.
a. have gone / are b. has gone / is c. have gone / is d. has gone / are
47. It _____ not the faculty members but the president who _____ this issue.
a. was / decide b. is / decides c. was / have decided d. is / decide
48. The department members, but not the chairman, _____ not to work on Valentine's Day.
a. wants b. want c. is wanting d. are wanting

49. Anyone who wants to pursue higher education _____ to pass entrance exams.
 a. has b. have c. is having d. are having
50. More than one student _____ to do those mathematic puzzles which _____ by the teacher last week.
 a. has tried / was given b. have tried / were given
 c. has tried / were given d. have tried / was given

MODULE 9

TENSES (Thì)

1. Simple present (Hiện tại đơn)

A. Cấu trúc (Form)

- a. Thể khẳng định (Affirmative)

I / We / You / They + bare infinitive verb
He / She / It + verb-s/es

* Bare infinitive verb: động từ nguyên mẫu không *to*

* Thêm *es* vào các động từ tận cùng là O, S, SH, CH, X, Z.

Ví dụ: I **like** football. (*Tôi thích bóng đá.*)

John **watches** TV every night. (*Tối nào John cũng xem tivi.*)

- b. Thể phủ định (Negative)

I / We / You / They + do not (don't) + bare infinitive verb
He / She / It + does not (doesn't) + bare infinitive verb

Ví dụ: We **do not/ don't go** to school on Sundays.

(*Chúng tôi không đi học vào ngày Chủ nhật.*)

- c. Thể nghi vấn (Interrogative)

Do + I / we / you / they + bare infinitive verb?
Does + he / she / it + bare infinitive verb?

Ví dụ: Do they live near here? (*Họ sống gần đây phải không?*)

• Cách chia động từ TO BE (thì, là)

- a. Thể khẳng định

I am ... We / You / They are ... He / She / It is ...

Ví dụ: I **am** a student. (*Tôi là học sinh.*)

- b. Thể phủ định

I am not ... We / You / They are not ... He / She / It is not...

Ví dụ: I **am not** a student. (*Tôi không phải là học sinh.*)

* Rút gọn: are not = aren't is not = isn't

- c. Thể nghi vấn

Am I ...? Are we / you / they ...? Is he / she / it ...?

Ví dụ: Are you a student? (*Có phải bạn là học sinh không?*)

B. Cách dùng (Usage)

Thì Hiện tại đơn được dùng để diễn đạt:

- a. Một sự thật hiển nhiên, chân lý.

Ví dụ: It always **rains** in November. (*Trời luôn mưa vào tháng Mười Một.*)

Water **is** necessary for species. (*Nước cần thiết cho muôn loài.*)

- b. Thói quen, cảm giác, nhận thức hoặc tình trạng cố định ở hiện tại.

Ví dụ: I usually **listen** to the radio at night. (*Tôi thường nghe radio vào ban đêm.*)

Most teenagers **like** films. (*Phần lớn thanh thiếu niên yêu thích phim ảnh.*)

My sister **lives** near Dover. (*Chị tôi sống gần Dover.*)

- Khi diễn tả thói quen (hành động lặp đi lặp lại ở hiện tại), thì hiện tại thường được dùng với các trạng từ năng diễn (Adverbs of Frequency).

- c. Thời khóa biểu, chương trình, kế hoạch theo thời gian cố định.

Ví dụ: His train **arrives** at 7:30. (*Chuyến tàu của anh ấy đến lúc 7:30.*)

I **start** my new job tomorrow. (*Ngày mai tôi sẽ bắt đầu công việc mới.*)

2. Present continuous (Hiện tại tiếp diễn)

A. Cấu trúc (Form)

- a. Thể khẳng định (Affirmative)

Subject + am / is / are + V-ing

Ví dụ: We **are learning** English. (*Chúng tôi đang học tiếng Anh.*)

- b. Thể phủ định (Negative)

Subject + am not / is not / are not + V-ing

Ví dụ: He **is not/ isn't working** now. (*Hiện giờ anh ấy không làm việc.*)

- c. Thể nghi vấn

Am / Is / Are + subject + V-ing?

Ví dụ: **Are you listening** to music? (*Bạn đang nghe nhạc phải không?*)

B. Cách dùng (Usage)

Thì hiện tại tiếp diễn được dùng để diễn đạt:

- a. Sự việc đang diễn ra ngay lúc nói, hoặc đang diễn ra ở hiện tại nhưng không nhất thiết vào lúc đang nói. Cách dùng này thường được dùng với các trạng từ, trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian: now (*bây giờ*), at the moment (*bây giờ*), right now (*ngay bây giờ*), at present (*hiện tại*)

Ví dụ: Listen! Mary **is singing**. (*Nghe kìa! Mary đang hát.*)

Are you preparing for the exam? (*Bạn đang chuẩn bị cho kỳ thi phải không?*)

- b. Sự việc mang tính tạm thời.

Ví dụ: Ms Young **works** at the hospital, but today she **is staying** at home to look after her sick baby. (*Cô Young làm việc ở bệnh viện, nhưng hôm nay cô ấy ở nhà chăm sóc con cô ấy bị bệnh.*)

- c. Sự việc xảy ra trong tương lai gần - một sự sắp xếp hoặc một kế hoạch đã định. Cách dùng này *luôn* được dùng với trạng từ chỉ thời gian tương lai (để tránh nhầm lẫn với hành động đang xảy ra).

Ví dụ: We **are coming** to see our grandfather tomorrow.

(Ngày mai chúng tôi sẽ đến thăm ông bà.)

- d. Sự việc thường xuyên xảy ra gây bức mình, khó chịu cho người nói. Dùng với *always* (*luôn luôn*), *continually* (*luôn*), *constantly* (*liên tục*).

Ví dụ: She **is always complaining** about her work.

(Cô ấy cứ phàn nàn về công việc của mình mãi.)

- * Lưu ý: Không dùng thì hiện tại tiếp diễn với các động từ trạng thái (stative verbs): *know, believe, understand, belong, need, hate, love, like, want, hear, see, smell, sound, have, wish, seem, taste, own, remember, forget, ...*. Dùng thì hiện tại đơn (simple present) với các động từ này.

3. Present perfect (Hiện tại hoàn thành)

A. Cấu trúc (Form)

- a. Thể khẳng định (Affirmative)

I / We / You / They + have + past participle
He / She / It + has + past participle

Ví dụ: I **have broken** my glasses. (Tôi đã bị vỡ kính.)

- b. Thể phủ định (Negative)

Subject + have/ has not + past participle

- * Rút gọn: have not = haven't has not = hasn't

Ví dụ: She **hasn't phoned**. (Cô ấy đã không gọi điện.)

- c. Thể nghi vấn (Interrogative)

Have/ Has + subject + past participle?

Ví dụ: **Have you finished?** (Bạn đã xong chưa?)

B. Cách dùng (Usage)

Thì hiện tại hoàn thành được dùng để diễn đạt:

- a. Sự việc vừa mới xảy ra.

Ví dụ: John **has just come** back from London. (John vừa từ Luân Đôn về.)

- b. Sự việc đã xảy ra trong quá khứ khi người nói không biết rõ hoặc không muốn đề cập đến thời gian chính xác.

Ví dụ: I **have visited** Hanoi. (Tôi đã đi tham quan Hà Nội.)

Have you ever been to Vietnam? (Bạn đã bao giờ đến Việt Nam chưa?)

- c. Sự việc xảy ra nhiều lần trong quá khứ và còn có thể được lặp lại ở hiện tại hoặc tương lai.

Ví dụ: I **have read** that book three times. (Tôi đã đọc quyển sách đó 3 lần.)

My sister is a writer. She **has written** a lot of short stories.

(Chị tôi là nhà văn. Chị ấy đã sáng tác nhiều truyện ngắn.)

- d. Sự việc xảy ra trong quá khứ còn kéo dài hoặc có ảnh hưởng đến hiện tại hay tương lai.

Ví dụ: John **has worked** here for three years. (*John đã làm việc ở đây được 3 năm.*) → hiện John vẫn còn đang làm việc ở đây
He **has broken** his leg, so he can't play tennis. (*Anh ấy bị gãy chân, nên anh ấy không chơi tennis được.*)

C. Các phó từ thường đi kèm với thì hiện tại hoàn thành: just, recently, lately (*vừa mới, gần đây*); already (*đã*); never (*không bao giờ, chưa bao giờ*); ever (*đã từng*); before (*trước đây*); for + khoảng thời gian (*trong*); since + mốc thời gian (*từ*); so far, until now, up to now, up to present (*cho đến nay*).

4. Present perfect continuous (Hiện tại hoàn thành tiếp diễn)

A. Cấu trúc (Form)

a. Thể khẳng định (Affirmative)

Subject + have/ has + been + V-ing

Ví dụ: I **have been thinking** about you. (*Tôi cứ nghĩ về anh suốt.*)

b. Thể phủ định (Negative)

Subject + have/ has not + been + V-ing

Ví dụ: Jane **hasn't been studying** very well recently.
(*Gần đây Jane học hành không được tốt lắm.*)

c. Thể nghi vấn (Interrogative)

Have/ Has + subject + been + V-ing?

Ví dụ: **Have you been waiting** long? (*Bạn đợi có lâu không?*)

B. Cách dùng (Usage)

Thì Hiện tại hoàn thành tiếp diễn được dùng để diễn đạt:

a. Sự việc xảy ra trong quá khứ kéo dài liên tục đến hiện tại hoặc tương lai, nhấn mạnh tính liên tục, kéo dài của sự việc.

Ví dụ: He **has been working** for ten hours without rest.
(*Anh ấy đã làm việc suốt 10 tiếng không nghỉ.*)

b. Sự việc vừa mới chấm dứt và có kết quả ở hiện tại.

Ví dụ: I must go and wash. I've **been gardening**.
(*Tôi phải đi tắm đây. Tôi vừa mới làm vườn xong.*)

5. Simple past (Quá khứ đơn)

A. Cấu trúc (Form)

a. Thể khẳng định (Affirmative)

Subject + verb (past tense)

Ví dụ: We **met** John yesterday. (*Chúng tôi đã gặp John hôm qua.*)

b. Thể phủ định (Negative)

Subject + did not (didn't) + bare infinitive verb

Ví dụ: He **didn't say** anything about it.
(*Anh ấy đã không nói gì về việc đó.*)

c. Thể nghi vấn

Did + subject + bare infinitive verb?

Ví dụ: **Did** they leave here? (*Họ đã rời khỏi đây rồi phải không?*)

• **Cách chia động từ TO BE (thì, là)**

a. Thể khẳng định

I / He / She / It was... We / You / They were...

Ví dụ: He **was** here yesterday. (*Hôm qua anh ấy đã ở đây.*)

b. Thể phủ định

I / He / She / It was not ... We / You / They were not ...

* Rút gọn: was not = wasn't were not = weren't

Ví dụ: We **were not/ weren't** in favour of his idea.

(*Chúng tôi đã không ủng hộ ý kiến của anh ấy.*)

c. Thể nghi vấn

Was I / he / she / it...? Were we / you / they...?

Ví dụ: **Were** they nice to you? (*Họ đã tử tế với bạn phải không?*)

B. Cách dùng (Usage)

Thì Quá khứ đơn được dùng để diễn đạt:

a. Sự việc đã xảy ra và chấm dứt trong quá khứ, biết rõ thời gian.

Ví dụ: He **worked** here three years ago.

(*Cách đây ba năm anh ấy đã làm việc ở đây.*)

b. Thói quen, tình cảm, sở thích, nhận thức ở quá khứ.

Ví dụ: I often **went** for a walk when I **lived** in the countryside.

(*Khi sống ở thôn quê, tôi thường đi dạo.*)

c. Sự việc đã xảy ra suốt một khoảng thời gian trong quá khứ, nhưng nay đã hoàn toàn chấm dứt.

Ví dụ: Mozart **wrote** more than 600 pieces of music.

(*Mozart đã sáng tác hơn 600 bản nhạc.*)

He **worked** here for two years. (*Anh ấy đã làm việc ở đây hai năm.*) → hiện anh ấy không còn làm ở đây nữa

d. Một chuỗi sự việc nối tiếp nhau trong quá khứ.

Ví dụ: Yesterday morning, John **got** up at 7 o'clock, **had** breakfast, and **went** to work. (*Sáng hôm qua, John thức dậy lúc 7 giờ, ăn sáng rồi đi làm.*)

6. Past continuous (Quá khứ tiếp diễn)

A. Cấu trúc (Form)

a. Thể khẳng định (Affirmative)

Subject + was / were + V-ing

Ví dụ: We **were working** on the computer at 3 p.m yesterday.

(*Lúc 3 giờ chiều hôm qua chúng tôi đang làm việc trên máy tính.*)

b. Thể phủ định (Negative)

Subject + was not / were not + V-ing

Ví dụ: He **wasn't studying** at that time. (*Vào lúc đó anh ấy không học.*)

c. Thể nghi vấn (Interrogative)

Was / Were + subject + V-ing?

Ví dụ: **Were you listening** to music last night?

(*Có phải tối hôm qua bạn đang nghe nhạc không?*)

B. Cách dùng (Usage)

Thì quá khứ tiếp diễn được dùng để diễn đạt:

a. Sự việc đang diễn ra tại một thời điểm cụ thể trong quá khứ.

Ví dụ: What **were you doing** at 7 o'clock last night? ~ I **was watching** TV. (*Lúc 7 giờ tối qua bạn đang làm gì? ~ Tôi đang xem TV.*)

b. Sự việc xảy ra và kéo dài một thời gian ở quá khứ.

Ví dụ: Yesterday, he **was working** in the laboratory all the afternoon. (*Suốt cả chiều hôm qua ông ấy đã làm việc trong phòng thí nghiệm.*)

c. Sự việc đang diễn ra trong quá khứ thì có một sự việc khác xảy đến (dùng *past continuous* cho hành động kéo dài, dùng *past simple* cho hành động xảy đến).

Ví dụ: When I **came** yesterday, they **were having** dinner. (*Hôm qua khi tôi đến, họ đang ăn tối.*)

d. Hai hành động xảy ra đồng thời tại một thời điểm xác định trong quá khứ.

Ví dụ: Yesterday, he **was reading** a newspaper while his wife **was cooking** in the kitchen. (*Hôm qua, anh ấy đọc báo trong khi vợ anh ấy nấu ăn trong bếp.*)

e. Sự việc xảy ra thường xuyên trong quá khứ gây bức mình, phiền toái.

Ví dụ: She **was always boasting** about her work when she worked here. (*Khi còn làm việc ở đây cô ấy cứ khoe khoang mãi về công việc của mình.*)

7. Past perfect (Quá khứ hoàn thành)

A. Cấu trúc (Form)

a. Thể khẳng định (Affirmative)

Subject + had + past participle

Ví dụ: I **had forgotten**. (*Tôi quên mất.*)

b. Thể phủ định (Negative)

Subject + had not (hadn't) + past participle

Ví dụ: It **hadn't rained** for weeks. (*Trời đã không mưa hàng tuần rồi.*)

c. Thể nghi vấn (Interrogative)

Had + subject + past participle?

Ví dụ: Where **had she been**? (*Cô ấy đã ở đâu vậy?*)

B. Cách dùng (Usage)

Thì Quá khứ hoàn thành được dùng để diễn đạt sự việc xảy ra, kéo dài và hoàn tất trước một thời điểm xác định trong quá khứ, hay trước một sự việc khác trong quá khứ (dùng thì quá khứ đơn cho sự việc xảy ra sau).

Ví dụ: John **had finished** his work before lunch time.

(Anh ấy đã xong việc trước giờ ăn trưa.)

They **had lived** here for three years before they **moved** to the countryside. (Trước khi về quê, họ đã sống ở đây ba năm.)

8. Past perfect continuous (Quá khứ hoàn thành tiếp diễn)

A. Cấu trúc (Form)

- a. Thể khẳng định (Affirmative)

Subject + had + been + V-ing

Ví dụ: He **had been working** very hard. (Anh ấy đã làm việc rất vất vả.)

- b. Thể phủ định (Negative)

Subject + had not (hadn't) + been + V-ing

Ví dụ: They **hadn't been listening**. (Họ đã không lắng nghe.)

- c. Thể nghi vấn (Interrogative)

Had + subject + been + V-ing?

Ví dụ: **Had it been raining?** (Trời đã mưa phải không?)

B. Cách dùng (Usage)

Thì Quá khứ hoàn thành tiếp diễn được dùng giống thì quá khứ hoàn thành nhưng nhấn mạnh tính liên tục, kéo dài của sự việc.

Ví dụ: At that time we **had been living** in the caravan for about six months. (Đến lúc đó thì chúng tôi đã sống trong xe moóc được khoảng 6 tháng.)

9. Simple Future (Tương lai đơn)

A. Cấu trúc (Form)

- a. Thể khẳng định (Affirmative)

I / We + will / shall ('ll) + bare infinitive verb
You / They / He / She / It + will ('ll) + bare infinitive verb

Ví dụ: I **will be**/ I'll **be** away some days. (Tôi sẽ đi vắng vài ngày.)

- b. Thể phủ định (Negative)

Subject + will / shall not + bare infinitive verb

* Rút gọn: will not = won't shall not = shan't

Ví dụ: We **won't/ shan't work** overtime next week.

(Tuần tới chúng tôi sẽ không làm thêm giờ.)

- c. Thể nghi vấn (Interrogative)

Will / Shall + subject + bare infinitive verb?

Ví dụ: **Will they be** here next week? (Họ sẽ đến đây vào tuần tới phải không?)

B. Cách dùng (Usage)

Thì tương lai đơn được dùng để diễn đạt:

- a. Sự việc, hành động sẽ xảy ra trong tương lai.

Ví dụ: My son **will enter** university next year. (*Năm sau con trai tôi sẽ vào đại học.*)

Cách dùng này thường được dùng với các trạng từ chỉ thời gian tương lai: tomorrow (*ngày mai*), someday (*một ngày nào đó*), next week/ month/ year/... (*tuần/ tháng/ năm/... tới*), soon (*chẳng bao lâu*).

- b. Lời hứa, lời đe dọa, lời đề nghị, lời mời, lời gợi ý, dự đoán hoặc một quyết định tức thì.

Ví dụ: Don't worry. I **will help** you. (*Đừng lo. Tôi sẽ giúp bạn.*)

I **will send** you out if you keep talking.

(*Tôi sẽ đuổi bạn ra ngoài nếu bạn cứ nói chuyện.*)

Will you help me with this, please? (*Vui lòng giúp tôi việc này với.*)

Shall we have dinner out tonight? (*Tối nay chúng ta ra ngoài ăn tối nhé.*)

I think everything **will be** all right. (*Tôi cho là mọi chuyện sẽ tốt đẹp.*)

It's twenty five dollars. ~OK. I'll **buy** it. (*Cái đó 25 đôla. ~ Được rồi, tôi sẽ mua nó.*)

10. Future continuous (Tương lai tiếp diễn)

A. Cấu trúc (Form)

- a. Thể khẳng định (Affirmative)

Subject + will / shall + be + V-ing

Ví dụ: Mary **will be working** all day tomorrow. (*Ngày mai Mary sẽ làm việc suốt ngày.*)

- b. Thể phủ định (Negative)

Subject + will / shall + not + be + V-ing

Ví dụ: He **will not be studying** at this time tomorrow.

(*Vào giờ này ngày mai anh ấy sẽ không đang học.*)

- c. Thể nghi vấn

Will / Shall + subject + be + V-ing?

Ví dụ: **Will you be waiting** for me when I come? (*Bạn sẽ chờ đến khi tôi đến phải không?*)

B. Cách dùng (Usage)

Thì Tương lai tiếp diễn được dùng để diễn đạt sự việc sẽ đang diễn ra tại một thời điểm xác định trong tương lai.

Ví dụ: What **will you be doing** at 9 o'clock tomorrow morning?

(*Bạn sẽ đang làm gì vào lúc 9 giờ sáng mai?*)

I **will be preparing** for my coming exam.

(*Tôi sẽ đang chuẩn bị cho kỳ thi sắp tới.*)

11. Future perfect (Tương lai hoàn thành)

A. Cấu trúc (Form)

- a. Thể khẳng định (Affirmative)

Subject + will / shall + have + past participle

- b. Thể phủ định (Negative)

Subject + will/ shall not + have + past participle

- c. Thể nghi vấn (Interrogative)

Will / Shall + subject + have + past participle?

B. Cách dùng (Usage)

Thì Tương lai hoàn thành được dùng để diễn đạt sự việc đã xảy ra, kéo dài và hoàn tất trước một thời điểm xác định trong tương lai, hay trước một sự việc tương lai khác (dùng thì hiện tại đơn cho sự việc xảy ra sau).

Ví dụ: The secretary **will have written** the report before the meeting.

(*Thư ký sẽ viết xong bản báo cáo trước buổi họp.*)

By the time he moves to London next month, he **will have learned** English for three years. (*Khi chuyển đến Luân Đôn vào tháng tới thì anh ấy sẽ (đã) học tiếng Anh được ba năm.*)

12. Future perfect continuous (Tương lai hoàn thành tiếp diễn)

A. Cấu trúc (Form)

- a. Thể khẳng định (Affirmative)

Subject + will / shall + have been + V-ing

- b. Thể phủ định (Negative)

Subject + will not / shall not + have been + V-ing

- c. Thể nghi vấn (Interrogative)

Will / Shall + subject + have been + V-ing?

B. Cách dùng (Usage)

Thì Tương lai hoàn thành tiếp diễn được dùng giống thì tương lai hoàn thành nhưng nhấn mạnh tính liên tục, kéo dài của sự việc.

Ví dụ: They **will have been driving** for 300 miles by noon.

(*Tới giữa trưa họ sẽ (đã) lái xe đi được 300 dặm.*)

13. Near Future (Tương lai gần)

A. Cấu trúc (Form)

Subject + be (am/is/are) + going to + V (bare-inf.)

B. Cách dùng (Usage)

Thì tương lai gần được dùng để diễn đạt:

- a. Dự định sẽ được thực hiện trong tương lai gần, hoặc một quyết định sẵn có.

Ví dụ: I cannot go with you. I **am going to help** my mother with some household chores. (*Tôi không đi với bạn được. Tôi định sẽ giúp mẹ làm việc nhà.*)

b. Dự đoán dựa vào cơ sở hay tình huống hiện tại.

Ví dụ: It is so cloudy. I think it **is going to rain**.

(*Trời nhiều mây quá. Tôi nghĩ trời sắp mưa.*)

- **Lưu ý**: Không sử dụng các thì tương lai trong mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian.

MULTIPLE CHOICE

Choose a, b, c, or d that best completes the sentence.

- Water _____ of hydrogen and oxygen.
a. is consisting b. consists c. has consisted d. will consist
- Don't give the chocolate to Helen. She _____ it.
a. hates b. is hating c. has hated d. hated
- The Sun _____ us heat and light.
a. will give b. is giving c. gives d. has given
- We _____ students, so we _____ to school on weekdays.
a. are / go often b. are / often go
c. are / have often gone d. have been / are often going
- Every day, Peter _____ at 7 o'clock, _____ breakfast, and then _____ to work at 7.30.
a. has often got / will have / go b. often gets up / has / goes
c. is often getting / having / goes d. has often got up / had / went
- California _____ in the United Kingdom. It _____ in the US.
a. is not / is b. has not been / is
c. will not be / will be d. was not / has been
- Cats _____ milk, but birds _____.
a. like / do not b. have liked / have not
c. are liking / are not d. were liking / were not
- Every day, Sarah _____ her children to school and then _____ home to prepare lunch.
a. is taking / returning b. takes / returns
c. has taken / returned d. will take / will return
- The sun _____ the ball of fire in the sky that the Earth _____ round.
a. will be / has gone b. will be / will be going
c. is / goes d. has been / is going
- Sally _____ really hard for her exams this week.
a. takes b. will be taking c. is taking d. had taken
- Many people _____ living in Seattle because it _____ continually.
a. are hating / is often raining b. have hated / will often rain
c. hate / often rains d. hated / was often raining
- The sun _____ in the East and _____ in the West.
a. rises / sets b. is rising / is setting
c. has risen / has set d. will rise / will set

13. _____ on the computer now?
 a. Is Peter working
 b. Was Peter working
 c. Has Peter worked
 d. Will Peter be working
14. Listen! Mr. Jones _____ the piano. You _____ noise.
 a. is playing / should not make
 b. plays / will not make
 c. has played / do not make
 d. played / would not make
15. Right now, Long _____ with his friends. They _____ the differences between British English and American English.
 a. sits / discuss
 b. has been sitting / will discuss
 c. was sitting / was discussing
 d. is sitting / are discussing
16. - _____ free this afternoon?
 - No, I _____.
 - What _____?
 - I _____ my dentist.
 a. Will you be / will not / have you done / have seen
 b. Have you been / have not / will you do / will see
 c. Are you / am not / do you do / see
 d. Are you / am not / are you doing / am seeing
17. Listen! Someone _____ at the door. I _____ it.
 a. knocks / answer
 b. has knocked / will be answering
 c. was knocking / answered
 d. is knocking / will answer
18. Every day, John _____ rice and vegetables for lunch, but today he _____ chicken soup and roast beef. Today is his brother's wedding.
 a. has / is having
 b. has / has had
 c. is having / has
 d. has had / has
19. It _____, so we can't go to the beach.
 a. had rained
 b. rained
 c. is raining
 d. will have rained
20. My father _____ complete silence when he _____.
 a. is wanting / works
 b. wants / is working
 c. has wanted / worked
 d. had wanted / was working
21. Since 2003 they _____ their son every year.
 a. visited
 b. have visited
 c. visit
 d. will visit
22. Usually, Mr. Pile _____ us Physics but today he _____ ill so Mrs. Young _____ us.
 a. teaches / is / is teaching
 b. has taught / is / teaches
 c. is teaching / has been / teaches
 d. taught / was / was teaching
23. I am sorry I cannot hear what you _____ because everybody _____ so loudly.
 a. are saying / will talk
 b. were saying / has talked
 c. have just said / is talking
 d. said / was talking
24. I _____ the same car for more than ten years. I _____ about buying a new one.
 a. have had / am thinking
 b. will have / think
 c. had / will think
 d. am going to have / was thinking
25. My best friend and I _____ each other for over fifteen years. We still _____ together once a week.
 a. were knowing / got
 b. knew / have got
 c. have known / get
 d. had known / are getting

26. The secretary _____ on the report for more than three hours. She hopes she may finish it by the lunch time.
 a. is working b. will be working c. has been working d. had been working
27. Please turn off the stove. The water _____ for more than fifteen minutes.
 a. is boiling b. was boiling c. has been boiling d. will be boiling
28. In the 19th century, it _____ two or three months to cross North America by covered wagon. The trip _____ very rough and often dangerous.
 a. took / was b. had taken / had been
 c. took / had been d. had taken / was
29. My grandfather _____ a very exciting life. When he was young, he _____ on the farm in the country, where there _____ a lot of cattle and meadows.
 a. has / has lived / have been b. had / lived / were
 c. was having / had lived / had been d. has had / is living / are
30. Mary _____ on the essay for two hours now and she _____ that she _____ it in one more hour.
 a. is working / has hoped / can finish b. has been working / hopes / will finish
 c. will have worked / hopes / finishes d. had been working / hoped / would finish
31. I _____ there once a long time ago and _____ back since.
 a. went / have not been b. have gone / will not be
 c. was going / am not d. had gone / was not
32. Those drivers _____ for three hours when a heavy storm suddenly _____.
 a. were driving / broke b. drove / was breaking
 c. had driven / was breaking d. had been driving / broke
33. I _____ to visit you yesterday, but you _____ at home.
 a. have come / are not b. had come / were not
 c. came / were not d. was coming / have not been
34. What _____ when the accident _____?
 a. have you been doing / occurs b. are you doing / will occur
 c. will you be doing / has occurred d. were you doing / occurred
35. We _____ TV when it _____ to rain.
 a. are watching / will start b. have watched / will be starting
 c. had watched / was starting d. were watching / started
36. I _____ a mystery movie on TV when the electricity _____ out.
 a. will be watching / is going b. watched / was going
 c. was watching / went d. have watching / goes
37. While the doctor _____ Mr. Jones, his son _____ outside this morning.
 a. was examining / was waiting b. will be examining / are waiting
 c. had been examining / was waiting d. are examining / is going to wait
38. When the boss _____ into the office, his secretary _____, and the accountant _____ on the phones.
 a. was walking / has been typing / has been talking
 b. had walked / was typing / had talked
 c. walked / was typing / was talking
 d. had been walking / had typed / talked

39. The guard _____ to his iPod, so he _____ the fire alarm.
 a. had listened / was not hearing b. was listening / did not hear
 c. listened / had not heard d. was listening / was not hearing
40. The Titanic _____ the Atlantic when it _____ an iceberg.
 a. was crossing / struck b. crossed / was striking
 c. had crossed / was striking d. crossed / had struck
41. We were late because we had some car problems. By the time we _____ to the train station, Susan _____ for us for more than two hours.
 a. got / had been waiting b. had got / were waiting
 c. had been getting / waited d. were getting / waited
42. Mike _____ to sit down because he _____ all day at work.
 a. had been wanting / was standing b. had wanted / stood
 c. wanted / had been standing d. was wanting / had stood
43. The motorcycle _____ to George for years before Tina _____ it last week.
 a. belonged / had bought b. was belonging / has bought
 c. had belonged / bought d. had been belonging / bought
44. No matter what _____ next, I _____ you.
 a. will happen / support b. happened / would have supported
 c. happens / will support d. is happening / have supported
45. Wait a minute. I _____ this box for you.
 a. am carrying b. will carry c. carry d. am going to carry
46. I _____ he _____.
 a. do not think / will come b. am not thinking / will come
 c. have not thought / comes d. will not think / comes
47. At this time tomorrow, Peter _____ for the graduation examination, so now he _____ very nervous although he _____ hard for more than 3 years.
 a. will sit / has been feeling / was learning
 b. will be sitting / feels / has been learning
 c. sits / will feel / is learning
 d. will have sat / is feeling / learns
48. By this time next summer, you _____ your studies and _____ a job
 a. will be completing / will find b. had completed / would find
 c. have completed / find d. will have completed / found
49. By the time I _____ to the office, the meeting _____ without me. My boss _____ furious with me and I _____ .
 a. will get / begins / is / am fired
 b. am getting / will begin / is going to be / will be fired
 c. got / had already begun / was / was fired
 d. have got / began / has been / am firing
50. By the time he _____ next month, he _____ for our company for ten years.
 a. retires / will have been working b. will retire / has been working
 c. has retired / is working d. would retired / was working
51. Look! There are a lot of clouds! It _____ soon.
 a. is going to rain b. has been raining c. will be raining d. will have rained

- OK. I _____ it.
- a. will take b. take c. have taken d. took
63. What _____ since 8 am up to now?
- a. you have been doing b. have you been doing
c. have been you doing d. have been doing you
64. Computers _____ in use since 1946.
- a. are b. were c. have been d. had been
65. _____ to Paris before?
- a. Are you ever b. Have you ever been
c. Will you ever be d. Had you ever been
66. Mr. Pike _____ lunch at home with his wife, but today he _____ lunch with his friends. Mrs. Pike _____ to London since two days ago.
- a. is usually having / has / went b. has usually had / has / is going
c. usually has / is having / has gone d. will have / has had / goes
67. John _____ a lot. In fact, when he _____ only two years old, he first _____ to the USA.
- a. always travels / was / had flown b. has always travelled / was / flew
c. is always travelling / had been / flew d. always travelled / was / has flown
68. Before we _____ a computer, we _____ that typewriter to type our assignments.
- a. bought / have used b. are buying / use
c. buy / have used d. bought / had used
69. John _____ in France, but his parents _____ in Cologne, Germany after living there for five years.
- a. was born / had met b. had been born / met
c. has been born / meet d. is born / have met
70. We _____ each other one day while John _____ a book in the library and I _____ down beside him.
- a. met / was reading / sat b. had met / was reading / had sat
c. meet / is reading / have sat d. will meet / reads / sat
71. John _____ his parents in France at the moment. He _____ in New York, but _____ his parents for the past few weeks.
- a. was visiting / live / had visited
b. has visited / lived / is visiting
c. is visiting / lives / has been visiting
d. has been visiting / had live / has been visiting
72. - _____ to come over for dinner tonight?
- Oh, I'm sorry, I can't. I _____ to a movie tonight with some friends.
- a. Have you wanted / will go b. Did you want / went
c. Do you want / am going d. Are you wanting / go
73. He _____ a good day until a thief _____ into his apartment, _____ all his money, and _____ him up.
- a. has been having / comes / takes / tied
b. had been having / came / took / tied
c. was having / had came / took / tied
d. is having / is coming / has take / ties

74. - Where _____ on holiday?
 - I don't know. We _____ yet.
 a. will you go / are not going to decide b. are you going / have not decided
 c. have you gone / do not decide d. did you go / had not decided
75. When I _____ the street I _____ somebody call my name.
 a. have crossed / hear b. had crossed / would hear
 c. am crossing / will hear d. was crossing / heard
76. The train _____ at 8.58, so we _____ in Scotland by lunchtime.
 a. leaves / will be b. left / have been c. has left / were d. left / had been
77. I think by the time we _____ there, Jim _____.
 a. get / will have left b. got / has left
 c. will get / will leave d. had got / left
78. I _____ the time when I _____ as a teacher.
 a. have never forgot / have first worked b. am never forgetting / first work
 c. will never forget / first worked d. had never forgot / was first working
79. Women _____ in presidential elections since 1921.
 a. vote b. have voted c. had voted d. are voting
80. By the time the boss _____ at 9.00, his employees _____ for two hours.
 a. will arrive / are working b. arrives / will have been working
 c. arrived / have been working d. has arrived / were working
81. - I am hungry. I _____ lunch yet.
 - Don't worry. I _____ you a sandwich.
 a. have not had / will get b. do not have / am going to get
 c. will not have / have got d. am not having / get
82. Do you think everything _____ when we _____ from the store?
 a. will be finished / get back
 b. is finished / will get back
 c. is going to finish / are getting back
 d. has been finished / will have got back
83. Look! Mary _____ a beautiful new dress. She _____ so pretty in the dress.
 a. was wearing / looked b. wears / has looked
 c. has been wearing / is looking d. is wearing / looks
84. I am sick of rain and bad weather! Hopefully, when we _____ up tomorrow morning, the sun _____.
 a. will wake / will shine b. are waking / shines
 c. are going to wake / is shining d. wake / will be shining
85. When the president _____ off the plane, the crowd _____ for him for half an hour.
 a. gets / will wait b. got / had been waiting
 c. had got / was waiting d. has got / will be waiting
86. Jane _____ at my house when you _____.
 a. is / will arrive b. will be / will arrive
 c. will be / arrive d. is / are going to arrive
87. They _____ here for three years before you _____ last week.
 a. have worked / came b. have been working / come
 c. was working / had come d. had been working / came

88. These students _____ hard since the beginning of the school year because they _____ their graduation exam next May.
- a. studied / are going to take b. are studying / will be taking
c. study / will have taken d. have been studying / will take
89. The students _____ chapter 5 next week, so they _____ to prepare for it now.
- a. have studied / will read b. are studying / have read
c. will study / read d. will be studying / are reading
90. By the time John _____ to help, we _____ the work.
- a. comes / finished b. comes / will have finished
c. will come / will have d. came / have finished
91. Mary sometimes _____ to turn off the computer before she _____ home.
- a. forgot / had gone b. has forgot / is going
c. is forgetting / has gone d. forgets / goes
92. They _____ good preparations before they _____ their final examination yesterday.
- a. made / had taken b. had made / took
c. have made / take d. will have made / have taken
93. He _____ a birthday party tomorrow for his daughter who _____ three.
- a. is having / turns b. will have had / will turn
c. is going to have/ has turned d. has had / is going to turn
94. When Susan _____ yesterday, Peter _____ dinner. He _____ cooking very much and often _____ the meals himself.
- a. phoned / was cooking / likes / prepares
b. had phoned / cooked / liked / prepared
c. was phoning / was cooking / has liked / is preparing
d. has phoned / is cooking / is liking / preparing
95. They _____ to finish their work because they _____ Los Angeles next Sunday.
- a. are needing / visit b. need / are going to visit
c. have needed / are visiting d. needed / have visited
96. At present Mary _____ her clothes. She _____ the clothes on Sundays.
- a. is washing / often washes b. was washing / has often washed
c. has washed / is often washing d. washes / often washed
97. I _____ that movie before last night.
- a. did not see b. has not seen c. had not seen d. will see
98. I _____ Lisa at the museum when I _____ to restaurant but she _____ me.
- a. was seeing / was going / had not seen
b. had seen / went / was not seeing
c. have seen / have gone / does not see
d. saw / was going / did not see
99. Ever since human beings _____ the Earth, they _____ use of various form of communication.
- a. have inhabited / have made b. inhabited / are making
c. had inhabited / had made d. inhabit / make
100. By the time John _____ the destination, he _____ for about three hours.
- a. will get / has walked b. gets / will have been walking
c. has got / walks d. is getting / is walking

MODULE 10

MODAL VERBS (Động từ tình thái)

1. CAN - CANNOT (can't)

Can được dùng để diễn đạt:

- Khả năng hoặc cơ hội ở hiện tại hoặc tương lai.

Ví dụ: I **can** ride a horse. (Tôi biết cưỡi ngựa.)

We **can** stay with my brother when we are in Paris.

(Chúng ta có thể ở với anh tôi khi chúng ta đến Paris.)

- Sự xin phép và cho phép.

Ví dụ: All of you **cannot** stay out after 10 pm.

(Tất cả các em không được ở ngoài sau 10 giờ tối.)

- Lời yêu cầu, đề nghị hoặc gợi ý.

Ví dụ: **Can** you give me a hand? (Bạn có thể giúp tôi không?)

- Khả năng có thể xảy ra hoặc dự đoán.

Ví dụ: Any child **can** grow up to be a famous person.

(Bất cứ đứa trẻ nào khi lớn lên cũng có thể trở thành người nổi tiếng.)

2. COULD - COULD NOT (couldn't)

Could được dùng để diễn đạt:

- Khả năng ở quá khứ.

Ví dụ: Nancy **could** ski by the age of ten. (Nancy biết trượt tuyết khi lên 10.)

- Khả năng có thể xảy ra / dự đoán (nhưng không chắc chắn bằng can).

Ví dụ: This new drug **could** be an important step in the fight against cancer. (Loại thuốc mới này có thể là một bước quan trọng trong trận chiến chống ung thư.)

- Sự xin phép; *could* lễ phép và trịnh trọng hơn *can*. Nhưng không dùng *could* để diễn đạt sự cho phép.

Ví dụ: **Could** I use your computer? ~Yes, of course you **can**.

(Tôi dùng máy tính của bạn được không? ~Tất nhiên là được.)

- Lời đề nghị, gợi ý hoặc lời yêu cầu lịch sự.

Ví dụ: **Could** you open the door, please? (Vui lòng mở giúp cửa.)

3. WILL - WILL NOT (won't): Xem Module 9 – Phần các thì Tương lai.

4. WOULD - WOULD NOT (wouldn't)

- *Would* là hình thức quá khứ của *will*.

Ví dụ: He said he **would** be back soon. (Anh ấy đã nói sẽ về ngay.)

- *Would* là trợ động từ tình thái, được dùng để diễn đạt:

- Lời yêu cầu, đề nghị lịch sự.

Ví dụ: **Would** you pay me in cash, please?

(Vui lòng thanh toán bằng tiền mặt.)

- Thói quen trong quá khứ.

Ví dụ: When we were children we **would** go skiing every winter.

(Khi còn nhỏ, mùa đông nào chúng tôi cũng đi trượt tuyết.)

5. SHALL - SHALL NOT (shan't)

- *Shall* được dùng cho ngôi thứ nhất (*I, we*) để diễn đạt hoặc dự đoán sự việc sẽ xảy ra trong tương lai.

Ví dụ: I **shall** be rich one day. (*Một ngày nào đó tôi sẽ giàu có.*)

- *Shall* được dùng chủ yếu trong câu hỏi xin ý kiến hoặc lời khuyên, câu đề nghị (*Shall I...?*) hoặc câu gợi ý (*Shall we...?*).

Ví dụ: Where **shall** we go now? (*Giờ chúng ta sẽ đi đâu?*)

Shall we go to the movies? (*Chúng ta đi xem phim nhé?*)

6. SHOULD - SHOULD NOT (shouldn't)

• *Should* là hình thức quá khứ của *shall*.

Ví dụ: I said I **should** consider the things carefully.

(*Tôi đã nói là tôi sẽ xem xét mọi việc cẩn thận.*)

• *Should* là động từ tình thái được dùng để diễn đạt:

- Sự bắt buộc, bổn phận (nghĩa của *should* không mạnh bằng *must*).

Ví dụ: You **should** study harder. (*Bạn phải học hành chăm chỉ hơn.*)

- Lời khuyên, lời đề nghị.

Ví dụ: You **should not** do so. (*Bạn không nên làm như vậy.*)

- Hỏi xin lời khuyên, ý kiến hoặc sự hướng dẫn.

Ví dụ: What **should** we do now? (*Bây giờ chúng ta nên làm gì?*)

7. OUGHT TO - OUGHT NOT TO (oughtn't to)

Ought to được dùng để diễn đạt:

- Lời khuyên, sự bắt buộc (nghĩa của *ought to* tương tự với *should*).

Ví dụ: You **ought not to** stay up so late. (*Bạn không nên thức khuya như vậy.*)

You **ought to** be more careful. (*Bạn phải cẩn thận hơn.*)

- Sự mong đợi.

Ví dụ: He **should/ ought to** be home by seven o'clock. (*Anh ấy nên về nhà trước 7 giờ*) [I expect him to be home by seven o'clock.]

8. MUST - MUST NOT (mustn't)

Must được dùng để diễn đạt:

- Sự cần thiết, sự bắt buộc (nghĩa của *must* mạnh hơn *should/ ought to* - với *should* có thể lựa chọn làm hoặc không làm, nhưng với *must* không có sự lựa chọn).

Ví dụ: Students **must** pass an entrance examination to study at this school.

(*Để được học ở trường này sinh viên phải đậu kỳ thi tuyển sinh.*)

All candidates **must** answer ten questions.

(*Tất cả các ứng viên phải trả lời 10 câu hỏi.*)

- Lời khuyên, lời yêu cầu được nhấn mạnh.

Ví dụ: It's a really interesting film. You **must** see it.

(*Phim đó thật sự rất hay. Bạn nên xem nó.*)

- Sự suy luận hợp lý, chắc chắn.

Ví dụ: Harry has been driving all day - he **must** be tired.

(*Harry lái xe cả ngày - chắc anh ấy mệt lắm.*)

Must not (mustn't) được dùng để chỉ sự cấm đoán.

Ví dụ: Cars **must not** park in front of the entrance.
(Ô tô không được đỗ trước lối vào.)

9. HAVE TO – DON'T HAVE TO

- *Have to* được dùng để diễn đạt sự cần thiết, sự bắt buộc (*have to* được dùng để chỉ sự bắt buộc do nội quy, mệnh lệnh, quy định, v.v; *must* được dùng để chỉ sự bắt buộc đến từ cảm xúc và mong ước của người nói.)

Ví dụ: The soup **has to** be stirred continuously to prevent burning.
(Món súp cần được khuấy thường xuyên để không bị cháy.)
They **have to** leave earlier than usual.
(Họ phải đi sớm hơn thường lệ.)

- *Do not have to* (= don't need) chỉ sự không cần thiết.

Ví dụ: Today is Sunday, so I **do not have to** get up early.
(Hôm nay Chủ nhật nên tôi không cần phải dậy sớm.)

* Lưu ý:

- Trợ động từ *do* (do, does, did) được dùng trong câu phủ định và câu hỏi.
- *Have to* được dùng thay *must* trong thì hiện tại hoàn thành, thì tiếp diễn, thì quá khứ, thì tương lai, dạng nguyên thể, danh động từ, và sau các động từ tình thái.

10. MAY / MIGHT – MAY NOT (mayn't) / MIGHT NOT (mightn't)

May/ might được dùng để diễn đạt:

- Sự xin phép (trang trọng và lễ phép hơn *can/ could*). *May* được dùng để chỉ sự cho phép.

Ví dụ: **May/ Might** I put the TV on? ~Yes, of course you **may**.
(Tôi có thể mở tivi không? ~Vâng, tất nhiên.)

- Khả năng có thể xảy ra/ sự suy đoán (*might* ít chắc chắn, ít khẳng định hơn *may*.)

Ví dụ: There **may/ might** be other problems that we do not know about.
(Có lẽ còn nhiều vấn đề khác mà chúng ta không biết.)

May được dùng để diễn đạt lời cầu chúc trang trọng (không dùng *might*).

Ví dụ: **May** you have a good trip. (Chúc bạn một chuyến đi vui vẻ.)

11. HAD BETTER – HAD BETTER NOT

Had better được dùng để diễn đạt:

- Lời khuyên.

Ví dụ: You **had better** take your umbrella with you today.
(Hôm nay bạn nên mang theo dù.)

- Lời cảnh báo.

Ví dụ: You **had better** work harder or you will be sacked. (Tốt hơn là bạn nên làm việc chăm chỉ hơn nếu không bạn sẽ bị đuổi đấy.)

12. NEED – NEEDN'T

Need được dùng để diễn đạt sự cần thiết hoặc sự bắt buộc.

Ví dụ: It is not cold. You **needn't** take your coat.
(Trời không lạnh. Bạn không cần mang theo áo khoác.)
This is the only form you **need** to fill in.
(Đây là mẫu đơn duy nhất mà bạn cần phải điền.)

13. WOULD RATHER - WOULD RATHER NOT

S + would rather (+ not) + V bare-infinitive (+ than)...
S + would rather (that) + S + V past simple / past perfect

- Ví dụ: I **would rather** stay at home. (*Tôi thích ở nhà hơn.*)
I **would rather** stay at home **than** go to the movie.
(*Tôi thích ở nhà hơn đi xem phim.*)
I **would rather** you **went** home now.
(*Tôi muốn anh về nhà ngay bây giờ.*)
I **would rather** you **had gone** home yesterday. (*Tôi muốn anh về nhà hôm qua.*) [You didn't go home yesterday.]

14. USED TO - DID NOT USE TO

- *Used to* được dùng để diễn đạt tình trạng hoặc thói quen trong quá khứ mà nay không còn nữa.

- Ví dụ: He **used to** live here. (*Anh ấy đã từng sống ở đây.*)
My father **used to** smoke a lot, but he stopped smoking last year.
(*Trước đây cha tôi hút thuốc rất nhiều, nhưng năm ngoái ông đã bỏ thuốc.*)

- Be/ get used to + V-ing/ noun: *quen với / trở nên quen với*

- Ví dụ: My mother **is used to** **getting** up early. (*Mẹ tôi quen dậy sớm.*)

* Lưu ý: Dùng *did* trong câu phủ định, câu hỏi và câu hỏi đuôi. *Used not to (usedn't to)* cũng có thể được dùng trong câu phủ định.

- **MODAL VERB + BE + V-ing:** Dự đoán sự việc có thể đang (hoặc không đang) xảy ra.

- Ví dụ: It is 9 am. He **must be working**.
(*Bây giờ là 9 giờ sáng. Chắc chắn anh ấy đang làm việc.*)
John **may / might be playing** football at his school – but I am not sure. (*Có lẽ John đang chơi đá bóng ở trường – nhưng tôi không chắc.*)

- **MODAL VERB + HAVE + PAST PARTICIPLE:** Dự đoán sự việc có thể đã (hoặc đã không) xảy ra trong quá khứ.

- Ví dụ: Peter failed the exam again. He **must have been** very sad. (*Peter lại thi rớt. Chắc là anh ấy (đã) buồn lắm.*)
John **cannot have been** at the party last night. I am sure that he has gone to London for three days. (*John không thể nào có mặt tại buổi tiệc tối qua. Tôi biết chắc là anh ấy đã đi Luân Đôn ba ngày nay.*)

MULTIPLE CHOICE

Choose a, b, c, or d that best completes the sentence.

1. John _____ speak three languages.
a. will b. can c. has to d. must
2. _____ you play the piano? – Of course, yes.
a. Can b. Must c. Should d. Need

3. The machine _____ be turned on by pressing this button.
a. might b. ought to c. should d. can
4. _____ you hold your breath for more than a minute? – Of course not.
a. Needn't b. Would c. Might d. Can
5. I _____ speak Arabic fluently when I was a child and we lived in Egypt.
a. would b. could c. must d. had to
6. When I was five years old, I _____ read and write.
a. can b. could c. may d. should
7. It is hot in here. _____ you open the window a bit, please?
a. Could b. Must c. Should d. Might
8. The book is optional. My professor said we _____ read it if we needed extra information for the essay. But we _____ read it if we don't want to.
a. will / cannot b. must / ought not
c. could / do not have to d. can / should not
9. Please make sure to water my plants while I am gone. If they don't get enough water, they _____ die.
a. must b. will c. should d. ought to
10. They _____ be away for the weekend but I am not sure.
a. needn't b. should not c. must d. might
11. You _____ leave now if you wish.
a. have to b. must c. may d. would
12. Let's go out for a drink. – I _____ love to.
a. will b. would c. must d. should
13. He is speaking English, but I think he _____ be Vietnamese, by judging by his accent.
a. will b. could c. would d. should
14. Listen, please. You _____ talk during this exam.
a. won't b. mustn't c. wouldn't d. couldn't
15. I _____ go on my own. You _____ go with me.
a. will / mustn't b. should / would not
c. could / will not d. can / needn't
16. You _____ tell Sandra anything about our story. She _____ keep a secret.
a. had better not / cannot b. needn't / would rather not
c. ought to / would not d. do not have to / should not
17. I am not really sure where Beverly is. She _____ in the living room, or perhaps she is in the backyard.
a. could not sit b. cannot sit c. must be sitting d. might be sitting
18. With luck, tomorrow _____ be a sunny day.
a. could b. must c. would rather d. needn't
19. Dane _____ the book we borrowed from the library. It was on the table, but now it has gone.
a. must have returned b. should have returned
c. cannot have returned d. needn't have returned
20. You _____ translate that. I understand what you say.
a. wouldn't b. needn't c. mustn't d. couldn't

21. You _____ be right but I am not sure so I am going back to check anyway.
a. can b. must c. should d. might
22. You _____ the air pressure in your tires if you do not want to get a flat tire on your trip.
a. should be checked b. do not have to check
c. mustn't check d. ought to check
23. The computer does not work. It _____ during transportation.
a. must have been damaged b. should have been damaged
c. can be damaging d. will damage
24. Mary decided not to join us for dinner. She _____ stay at work to finish the marketing report.
a. had to b. must c. can d. may
25. You _____ book the tickets for the play in advance because they sell out quickly.
a. could b. mustn't c. have to d. may
26. You can't mean that! You _____.
a. must be joking b. can be joking c. can joke d. have to joke
27. If Daisy has not come home yet, she _____ for us at the school gate.
a. can't be waiting b. would be waiting
c. must still be waiting d. will be waiting
28. It _____ Sam who called and did not leave a message on the answering machine. I am not sure.
a. must be b. might be c. must have been d. might have been
29. Margaret promised to meet us at the entrance to the theater tomorrow night. She _____ for us when we get there.
a. mustn't be waiting b. could not be waiting
c. ought to be waiting d. might have been waiting
30. What do you have in mind? – I _____ prefer a long dress.
a. will b. would c. can d. must
31. She _____ a lot after his husband's accident. That was why her eyes were so red and swollen.
a. must be crying b. can have cried c. must have cried d. will have cried
32. She _____ that it is a good idea. It is crazy!
a. can't think b. must think c. may have thought d. could think
33. _____ I use your car? – Of course. Here's the key.
a. May b. Must c. Need d. Should
34. I _____ have you stayed with me during the summer.
a. could b. may c. must d. would rather
35. I know what you mean. You _____ explain further.
a. won't b. mightn't c. needn't d. mustn't
36. Hiking the trail to the peak _____ be dangerous if you are not well prepared for dramatic weather changes.
a. shall b. should c. might d. had better
37. She _____ be able to come on holiday next month if her parents give her permission.
a. will b. can c. could d. mustn't

38. We _____ forget our identity card when we are travelling.
a. need b. mustn't c. could not d. have to
39. Look! She is laughing. She _____ something funny or happy.
a. must have b. must have had c. could have had d. can't have had
40. Your diving equipment _____ regularly if you want to keep it in good condition.
a. may be cleaned b. can't be cleaned c. can clean d. must be cleaned
41. Are you joking? David _____ a new car last week. I am sure that he does not have money.
a. mustn't be buying b. would be buying
c. may have bought d. can't have bought
42. Our teacher is so strict. We _____ forget to do our homework.
a. must b. mustn't c. needn't d. may
43. _____ you mind if I brought a colleague with me?
a. Can b. Must c. Would d. Might
44. John was sacked last year. He _____ harder
a. may have worked b. should have worked
c. must have worked d. should be working
45. We _____ be able to go to the party. We are going to a wedding.
a. will b. must c. may d. might
46. When you have a small child in the house, you _____ leave small objects lying around.
a. may not b. should not c. needn't d. ought to
47. John _____ drive when he was eighteen.
a. cannot b. could not c. would rather not d. might not
48. Frank's wallet is lying on the coffee table. He _____ it here last night.
a. had to leave b. will have left c. must leave d. must have left
49. We _____ walk all the way home. We _____ take a taxi.
a. could not / had to b. needn't / can
c. would rather not / must d. ought not to / might
50. I was reading the book last night before I went to bed. I never took it out of this room. It _____ around here somewhere. Where _____ it be?
a. should have been / shall b. could lie / must
c. must be lying / can d. had to be lying / will

MODULE 11

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES - WISH and IF ONLY (Câu điều kiện - WISH và IF ONLY)

I. CÂU ĐIỀU KIỆN (CONDITIONAL SENTENCES)

Câu điều kiện gồm có hai mệnh đề: mệnh đề *if* (*if*-clause) chỉ điều kiện và mệnh đề chính (main clause) chỉ kết quả. Có ba loại câu điều kiện:

1. Điều kiện có thật trong hiện tại hoặc tương lai (real condition in the present or future): có thể thực hiện trong hiện tại hoặc tương lai.

IF CLAUSE	MAIN CLAUSE
Present tense	will + bare-infinitive

Ví dụ: If he **runs**, he'll **get** there in time.

(Nếu anh ấy chạy thì anh ấy sẽ đến đó kịp lúc.)

- Dùng thì hiện tại đơn (present simple) trong mệnh đề chính để diễn đạt một sự thật hiển nhiên, một quy luật hoặc một thói quen.

Ví dụ: If we **boil** water, it **vapors**. (Nếu chúng ta đun nước, nước sẽ bốc hơi.)

- Dùng thì hiện tại tiếp diễn trong mệnh đề điều kiện để diễn đạt sự tiếp diễn của hành động và thì hiện tại hoàn thành để diễn đạt sự hoàn tất.

Ví dụ: If the baby **is sleeping**, don't make noise.

(Nếu em bé đang ngủ, đừng làm ồn.)

If you **have finished** your work, you can go home.

(Nếu bạn làm xong thì bạn có thể về.)

- Các động từ tình thái *can, may, might, should, ought to, have to, must,...* có thể được dùng trong mệnh đề chính (main clause).

Ví dụ: If you **get** here before eight, we **can catch** the early train. (Nếu anh đến đây trước 8 giờ thì chúng ta có thể bắt chuyến tàu sớm.)

2. Điều kiện không có thật trong hiện tại (Unreal condition in the present): không có thật hoặc không thể xảy ra trong hiện tại hoặc tương lai.

IF CLAUSE	MAIN CLAUSE
Past simple	would / should/ could / might + bare inf.

Ví dụ: If I **knew** her name, I **would tell** you. (Nếu tôi biết tên cô ấy, tôi sẽ nói với anh.) → but I don't know her name

If he **was** older, he **would be** wiser.

(Nếu nó lớn hơn, nó sẽ khôn ngoan hơn.)

- *Were* thường được dùng thay cho *was* (với *I, he, she, it*) trong cấu trúc này.

Ví dụ: If he **were** older, he **would be** wiser.

3. Điều kiện không có thật trong quá khứ (Unreal condition in the past): không thể xảy ra trong quá khứ

IF CLAUSE	MAIN CLAUSE
Past perfect	would / should / could / might + have + past part.

Ví dụ: If you **had invited** Sue, she **would have come**. (Giá mà bạn mời Sue thì cô ấy đã đến rồi.) → but you didn't invite Sue so she did not come.

* **Lưu ý:**

- Có thể dùng kết hợp điều kiện loại 2 và loại 3 (không có thật trong hiện tại và không có thật trong quá khứ)

Ví dụ: If John **had not drunk** so much last night, he **would not feel** sick now. (Nếu tối qua John không uống quá nhiều thì bây giờ anh ấy sẽ không buồn nôn.)

If I **knew** you were coming I **would have baked** a cake.
(*Nếu biết bạn đến thì tôi đã nướng bánh rồi.*)

- Không dùng *will, would* trong mệnh đề điều kiện (if-clause)

Ví dụ: If I **have** time, I'll **help** you. (NOT If I'll ~~have~~ time, I'll ~~help~~ you.)

• Những cách khác để diễn tả điều kiện

1. Unless = if... not; except if (*nếu ... không; trừ khi*)

Ví dụ: I'll take the job **unless** the pay is too low. (= if the pay isn't too low / **except if** the pay is too low)
(*Tôi sẽ nhận công việc đó nếu tiền lương không quá thấp.*)

2. Without / But for + noun (*nếu không*)

Ví dụ: If you did not help me, I would not overcome the trouble.
→ **Without / But for your help**, I would not overcome the trouble.
(*Nếu không có sự giúp đỡ của bạn thì tôi đã không qua được rắc rối đó.*)

3. Should / Were / Had + subject + verb

Ví dụ: **Should you** change your mind, ... (= If you should change ...)
Were she my daughter, ... (= If she were my daughter ...)
Had I not realised what you intended, ... (= If I hadn't realised ...)
[NOT ~~Hadn't I~~ realised what you intended, ...]

4. Imagine (that), suppose/ supposing (that) (*giả sử như*), provided/ providing (that), as/ so long as, on condition (that) (*miễn là, với điều kiện là*), or/ otherwise (*nếu không*), only if (*chỉ khi*), in case (*nếu*), ...

Ví dụ: Start soon **otherwise** you will be late. (*Hãy bắt đầu sớm, nếu không bạn sẽ trễ.*) [= If you do not start soon, you will be late.]
I'll give you the day off **on condition that** you work on Saturday morning. (*Tôi sẽ cho anh nghỉ một ngày với điều kiện là anh phải làm việc vào sáng thứ Bảy.*)

II. WISH & IF ONLY

Sau *wish* và *if only* có 3 loại mệnh đề được dùng để chỉ sự ao ước ở tương lai, hiện tại và quá khứ.

1. Ao ước ở tương lai (Future wish): mong điều gì đó sẽ xảy ra trong tương lai.

S + wish If only + S + would/ could + V(bare-inf)

Ví dụ: I wish we **would not have** an exam tomorrow.
(*Ước gì ngày mai chúng tôi không phải thi.*)
If only it **would stop** raining, we could go out.
(*Giá mà trời tạnh mưa, chúng ta có thể đi chơi.*)

2. Ao ước ở hiện tại (Present wish): ước điều không thể xảy ra trong hiện tại.

S + wish If only + S + V(past simple)
--

Ví dụ: I wish I **was** rich. (*Ước gì tôi giàu có.*) → but I'm poor now
If only I **knew** her name. (*Ước gì tôi biết tên cô ấy.*)

- Were có thể được dùng thay cho was trong cấu trúc này, nhất là trong lối văn trịnh trọng.

Ví dụ: I wish I **were** rich.

3. Ao ước ở quá khứ (Past wish): ước điều gì đó đã hoặc đã không xảy ra trong quá khứ.

S + wish If only + S + V(past perfect)

Ví dụ: I wish I **had succeeded** in the final exam.

(*Ước gì tôi đã đậu kỳ thi cuối cùng.*) → but I failed the exam

If only you **hadn't said** that. (*Giá mà anh đã không nói điều đó.*)

MULTIPLE CHOICE

Choose a, b, c, or d that best completes the sentence.

- If she _____ me, tell her to leave a message.
a. calls b. will call c. called d. would call
- John will pick me up _____.
a. in case it rained b. if it rains
c. provided that it would rain d. unless it rained
- _____ you want to go out during a lecture, what should you do?
a. As b. If c. Though d. When
- If you won the lottery, _____?
a. what will you do b. what had you done
c. what would you do d. what did you do
- If we start the new project, we _____ more staff.
a. will need b. need c. would need d. needed
- If John _____ 10 years younger, he _____ for the job.
a. is / will apply b. was / has applied
c. had been / will have applied d. were / would apply
- You will not be allowed to attend the club meeting _____ you are a member.
a. unless b. if c. providing that d. supposed that
- _____ people had not cut so many trees.
a. If b. If only c. Unless d. Even if
- If the president _____ last night's train, he _____ here now.
a. took / were b. were taking / is
c. had taken / would have been d. had taken / would be
- If he _____ more time, he _____ decorating the baby's room before she was born.
a. has / will have finished b. had / would finish
c. had had / would have finished d. had had / would finish
- _____ he arrives soon, we will have to start the conference without him.
a. Suppose b. Provided c. Unless d. If
- _____ as much money as Bill Gates of Microsoft, I would retire.
a. If I had b. If I have c. Unless I had d. If I had had

31. _____ the boat leaves on time, we will arrive in Paris by the morning.
 a. If only b. Provided that c. But for d. Without
32. _____ to the music after 10 pm, you should turn the volume down or use an earphone.
 a. If you are listening b. Unless you listen
 c. Provided you won't listen d. Otherwise you listen
33. If Mary _____ so long on the computer last night, her eyes _____ red now.
 a. did not worked / do not get b. were not working / did not get
 c. had not been working / would not get d. had not worked / would not have got
34. If I _____ him this afternoon, I _____ him in the evening.
 a. do not see / will phone b. will not see / phone
 c. did not see / would phone d. have not seen / am going to phone
35. I am so tired from working so hard. _____ at home now.
 a. Supposing that I had been b. if I was
 c. Provided that I was d. If only I were
36. If they _____ him yesterday, he _____ to the party now.
 a. would not have insulted / were coming b. did not insult / will come
 c. had not insulted / would have come d. had not insulted / would come
37. Try harder _____ you will lose everything you have.
 a. provided that b. supposing that c. if d. unless
38. _____ his best contribution, our team would not have won the game.
 a. But for b. If c. If only d. Unless
39. The salesgirl told the boy that if he did not leave she _____ the police immediately.
 a. will call b. called c. would call d. would have called
40. Submit the report to the boss _____ it.
 a. unless you would finish b. provided that you would finished
 c. if you have finished d. if only you finished
41. Tina's train arrived ahead of schedule. _____ I had decided to go to the train station early, she would have waited there for more than twenty minutes before I arrived.
 a. unless b. if c. otherwise d. supposed that
42. I wish _____ at the seaside now.
 a. I am b. if only I were c. I had been d. I were
43. Peter behaved so badly at the party. I wish _____ him.
 a. I do not invite b. I did not invite c. I had not invited d. I would not invite
44. I wish she _____ up for a moment and let someone else speak.
 a. will shut b. would shut c. is going to shut d. shut
45. Peter wishes that he _____ part in the game, but he cannot because of his injured leg.
 a. can take b. is taking c. were taking d. had taken
46. I wish you _____ borrowing money from me. You have never paid it back.
 a. would not keep b. do not keep c. are not keeping d. have not kept
47. Mary told her friends that she would arrive on time. She wishes she _____ to be on time because now they are waiting for her.
 a. promised b. did not promise
 c. would not promise d. had not promised

48. Peter's flat is hot. He wishes _____.
- a. that it were not b. if it was not c. it had not been d. if it would not
49. The film was so bad. We wish _____ our money on it.
- a. if we did not spend b. that we did not spend
c. that we had not spent d. whether we had not spent
50. We wish it _____ raining soon so that we can depart our trip.
- a. stops b. will stop c. would stop d. had stopped

MODULE 12

PASSIVE FORM (*Thể bị động*)

Câu bị động (passive sentence) là câu trong đó chủ ngữ là người hay vật nhận hoặc chịu tác động của hành động.

• **Cách đổi sang câu bị động (Passive transformation)**

Active: **Subject** **Verb** **Object**

Passive: **Subject** **BE + past participle** **by Object**

Ví dụ: They **built** that bridge in 1999. (*Họ xây cây cầu đó năm 1999.*)

→ That bridge **was built** in 1999. (*Cây cầu đó được xây năm 1999.*)

Present simple	→	am/ is/ are + past participle
Present continuous	→	am/ is/ are + being + past participle
Past simple	→	was/ were + past participle
Past continuous	→	was/ were + being + past participle
Present perfect	→	have/ has + been + past participle
Past perfect	→	had + been + past participle
Future simple	→	will + be + past participle
Future continuous	→	will be + being + past participle
Future perfect	→	will + have been + past participle
Be going to	→	am/ is/ are going to + be + past participle
Modal verbs	→	can, should, must,... + be + past participle
Present infinitive	→	to be + past participle
Perfect infinitive	→	to have been + past participle
Present participle	→	being + past participle
Perfect participle	→	having been + past participle

* **Lưu ý:**

- Chỉ có thể đổi sang câu bị động với những câu có ngoại động từ (transitive verb).
- Động từ *to be* trong câu bị động phải thích hợp với thì (tense) của câu chủ động và phù hợp với chủ từ bị động (passive subject).
- Các chủ từ *I, we, you, they, he, she, one, everyone, somebody, people* trong câu chủ động thường được bỏ đi trong câu bị động.

- Trạng từ chỉ nơi chốn + BY (agent) + Trạng từ chỉ thời gian
Ví dụ: The vase was put **on the table** by Peter **yesterday**.
- Trạng từ chỉ thể cách thường đứng giữa *be* và quá khứ phân từ.
Ví dụ: The problem has been **carefully** studied by the scientists.
(*Vấn đề đã được các nhà khoa học nghiên cứu kỹ.*)

● **Một số cấu trúc bị động đặc biệt (Special passive structures)**

1. Động từ với hai tân ngữ (verb with two objects)

Khi động từ chủ động có hai tân ngữ (objects) thì cả hai tân ngữ đều có thể làm chủ ngữ cho câu bị động. Tuy nhiên tân ngữ chỉ người thường được sử dụng hơn.

Ví dụ: My mother gave me (I.O) some money (D.O).

→ **I** was given some money by my mother.

→ **Some money** was given to me by my mother.

2. Động từ chỉ giác quan (verbs of perception: *see, notice, hear, look, taste,...*)

Active:	S + V + O + bare-inf. / V-ing
Passive:	S + be + past part. + to-inf. / V-ing

Ví dụ: We **saw her go/ going** out of the house.

→ She **was seen to go/ going** out of the house.

3. Động từ chỉ cảm xúc (*like, love, hate, wish, prefer, hope,...*)

Active:	S + V + O + to-infinitive
Passive:	S + V + O + to be + past part.

Ví dụ: He **wanted someone to take** some photos.

→ He **wanted some photos to be taken**.

4. Động từ chỉ ý kiến

Active:	S + V (+ that) + clause (S₂ + V₂ + O₂...)
Passive:	• It + be + past participle (+ that) + clause • S₂ + be + past participle + to-infinitive / to have + pp

Ví dụ: People say (that) John is nice.

→ **It is said** (that) John is nice

→ **John is said to be** nice.

* **Lưu ý:** Hành động của mệnh đề *that* xảy ra trước hành động trong mệnh đề chính thì dùng perfect infinitive (to have + past participle).

Ví dụ: They report that three victims were missing.

→ Three victims are reported **to have been** missing.

5. Thể sai khiến (Causative form)

Active:	S + have + O (person) + bare-infinitive + O (thing) S + get + O (person) + to-infinitive + O (thing)
Passive:	S + have/ get + O (thing) + past participle

Ví dụ: I will **have some workers repair** the roof./ I will **get some workers to repair** the roof.

→ I will **have/ get the roof repaired**.

MULTIPLE CHOICE

Choose a, b, c, or d that best completes the sentence, or that has the closest meaning to the original sentence.

1. _____ yet?
a. Has the essay been written b. Has the essay written
c. Did the essay write d. Was the essay be written
2. _____ nuclear waste is dangerous.
a. It says b. It is said c. People is said d. It is saying
3. They have not used this typewriter for a long time.
a. For a long time has not been used this typewriter.
b. This typewriter has not used for a long time.
c. This typewriter has been not used for a long time.
d. This typewriter has not been used for a long time.
4. All bottles _____ before transportation.
a. is froze b. were frozen c. will been frozen d. have frozen
5. _____ last year?
a. Did this van buy b. Was this van bought
c. Has this van bought d. Has this van been bought
6. The club president _____ seriously ill.
a. is said b. is said to be c. is said for being d. is said being
7. They do not allow smoking in schools.
a. Smoking is not allowed in schools. b. Schools are not allowed smoking.
c. In schools are not allowed smoking. d. Smoking in schools do not allow.
8. Peter and Tom _____ in an accident yesterday.
a. are hurt b. were hurted c. were hurt d. have been hurt
9. The fire _____ by an electrical fault.
a. could have caused b. could been have caused
c. could have been caused d. have caused
10. Learning English _____ easy.
a. says not to be b. said to be not c. is said be not d. is said not to be
11. We are waiting for the telephone _____ so that we can have a talk to our son.
a. be connecting b. to be connected c. connected d. be connect
12. My house _____ white.
a. used to paint b. are used to being painted
c. used to be painted d. used to painted
13. Chinese _____ by more than one billion people all over the world.
a. speaks b. is speaking c. spoken d. is spoken
14. Modern zoos are very different from zoos which _____ fifty years ago.
a. was built b. was building c. to be built d. building
15. Who established that museum?
a. Who was established that museum?
b. Was that museum established by who?
c. By whom was that museum established?
d. Did that museum establish by whom?

16. They think that someone started the fire on purpose.
- Someone is thought to start the fire on purpose.
 - They think that the fire which was started by someone on purpose.
 - The fire is thought to be started on purpose.
 - The fire is thought to have been started on purpose.
17. The player _____ quickly from the fall.
- reported to be recovered
 - reported to has recovered
 - is reported to have recovered
 - is reported to have been recovered
18. The little boy put the fish in the pool and immediately it was nowhere _____.
- to see
 - saw
 - to be seeing
 - to be seen.
19. Up to now Down's syndrome _____.
- have not been cured
 - have not to be cured
 - have not cured
 - have not been curing
20. They do not understand what he is saying.
- He is not being understood.
 - He does not understanding what is being said.
 - What is being said does not understand.
 - What he is saying is not understood.
21. The prisoner _____ yesterday.
- released
 - has released
 - was released
 - has been released
22. That machine _____ eggs.
- is used for grading
 - is used grading
 - used to grade
 - is used to grading
23. I am looking for the report which _____ on the table.
- placed
 - has been placed
 - was placing
 - has placed
24. They consider stamp collecting as a favorite pastime.
- A favorite pastime is considered stamp collecting.
 - A favorite pastime is to be considered stamp collecting by them.
 - Stamp collecting is considered as a favorite pastime.
 - Stamp collecting is considered to be as a favorite pastime.
25. Sea turtle eggs _____ to protect from _____ by other animals.
- are buried / being eaten
 - buried / to be eaten
 - are burying / eating
 - be buried / eaten
26. The cutting down of trees _____ to prevent forest destruction.
- should control
 - should be controlled
 - would control
 - controlling
27. The first turtles _____ about 200 million years ago.
- believed, to exist
 - are believing to be existed
 - believed to be existed
 - are believed to have existed
28. We cannot do this.
- This cannot do.
 - This cannot do by us.
 - This cannot be done
 - This cannot to be done
29. They do not know anything about the extinction of that species.
- Anything about the extinction of that species is not known by them.
 - The extinction of that species is not known anything.

42. Some scientists report that dolphins have a brain capacity larger than human beings'.
- A brain capacity larger than human beings' that dolphins have to be reported.
 - Dolphins are reported having a brain capacity larger than human beings'.
 - Dolphins are reported to have a brain capacity larger than human beings'.
 - Dolphins are reported that they have a brain capacity larger than human beings'.
43. The project _____ secret. Everybody _____ about it soon.
- could not been kept / is learnt
 - could not be kept / learnt
 - could not be keep / was learnt
 - could not kept / is learned
44. Daisy was angry that she _____ a book which _____.
- had been given / was badly damaged
 - has been given / badly damaged
 - was giving / is damaged badly
 - has given / damaged badly
45. We are worried about the damage _____ by fires.
- that caused
 - causing
 - caused
 - was caused
46. The money _____ soon after I receive my salary.
- will give Peter
 - will be given Peter
 - will be given to Peter
 - will have given to Peter
47. Everybody congratulated him on his successful journey to explore the Everest.
- His successful journey to explore the Everest was congratulated on him.
 - His successful journey was congratulated on him to explore the Everest.
 - He was congratulated on his successful journey to explore the Everest.
 - He was congratulated by anybody on his successful journey to explore the Everest.
48. Are you fond of the job they have offered you?
- Are you fond of the job which has been offered to you?
 - Have they offered you the job that you are fond of?
 - Are you fond of the job has been offered to you?
 - Have you been fond of the job which has offered to you?
49. Lectures _____ on the Internet.
- are recorded and posted
 - are recorded and post
 - are recording and posted
 - are recording and be posted
50. Not much _____ about the accident since that time.
- has said
 - it is said
 - had said
 - has been said

MODULE 13

REPORTED SPEECH (CÂU GIÁN TIẾP)

Lời nói gián tiếp (reported speech) là lời tường thuật lại ý của người nói, đôi khi không cần phải dùng đúng những từ của người nói.

Direct speech: Peter said, "I am very busy." (*Peter nói: "Tôi rất bận."*)

Reported Speech: Peter said (that) he was very busy. (*Peter nói (rằng) anh ấy rất bận.*)

• Cách đổi từ câu trực tiếp sang câu gián tiếp.

1. Câu trần thuật (statements)

a. Dùng động từ giới thiệu *say* hoặc *tell*: *say* (that), *say to somebody* (that), *tell somebody* (that)

b. Đổi các đại từ nhân xưng, đại từ hoặc tính từ sở hữu, đại từ phản thân sao cho tương ứng với chủ ngữ hoặc tân ngữ của mệnh đề chính.

c. Đổi thì của động từ thành thì quá khứ tương ứng.

Simple Present	→ Simple Past
Present Continuous	→ Past Continuous
Present Perfect	→ Past Perfect
Simple Past	→ Past Perfect
Past Continuous	→ Past Perfect Continuous
Will / Shall / Can / May	→ Would / Should / Could / Might
Must / Have to	→ Had to

* Lưu ý: Không đổi thì trong câu gián tiếp khi động từ giới thiệu ở thì hiện tại (*present simple, present continuous, present perfect*), câu dẫn trực tiếp là câu điều kiện không có thật, hoặc câu trực tiếp diễn tả một chân lý, một sự thật hiển nhiên.

d. Đổi một số các tính từ chỉ định, trạng từ hoặc trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian, nơi chốn.

This / These	→ That / Those
Now	→ Then
Ago	→ Before
Today / Tonight	→ That day / That night
Tomorrow	→ The next day, The following day
Yesterday	→ The day before, The previous day
Next week/ month	→ The following week/ month The week/ month after
Last week/ month	→ The previous week/ month The week / month / year before
Here	→ There

Ví dụ: Mary said to Peter, "I have seen this film."

→ Mary told Peter (that) she **had seen** that film.

(Mary nói với Peter (rằng) cô ấy đã xem bộ phim đó rồi.)

2. Câu hỏi (questions)

a. Câu hỏi Yes - No (Yes - No question)

- Dùng các động từ giới thiệu: *ask, inquire, wonder, want to know*.

- Dùng *if* hoặc *whether* sau động từ giới thiệu.

- Đổi cấu trúc câu hỏi thành câu trần thuật.

- Đổi thì của động từ, đại từ, tính từ, trạng từ (giống cách đổi trong câu trần thuật).

Ví dụ: Tom said to Mary, "Will you come next week?"

→ Tom asked Mary **if / whether** she **would come** the following week. (Tom hỏi Mary tuần sau có đến không.)

b. Câu hỏi Wh- (Wh-question)

- Dùng các động từ giới thiệu: *ask, inquire, wonder, want to know.*
- Lặp lại từ để hỏi (what, where, when, why,...) sau động từ giới thiệu.
- Đổi cấu trúc câu hỏi thành câu trần thuật.
- Đổi thì của động từ, đại từ, tính từ, trạng từ.

Ví dụ: Tom asked me, "Where can I buy some wine?"

→ Tom asked me **where he could buy** some wine.

(*Tom hỏi tôi anh ấy có thể mua rượu ở đâu.*)

3. Câu mệnh lệnh, câu yêu cầu, lời đề nghị, lời khuyên, v.v. (requests, orders, offers, advices, ect.)

- Dùng động từ giới thiệu *ask, tell, order, request, offer, advise, ...*
- Đặt tân ngữ chỉ người nhận lệnh (nếu có) sau động từ giới thiệu.
- Dùng dạng nguyên mẫu có to (to-infinitive) của động từ trong câu trực tiếp.

Ví dụ: The teacher said to his students, "Keep silent, please."

→ The teacher asked his students **to keep** silent.

(*Thầy giáo yêu cầu học sinh giữ yên lặng.*)

Tom told me, "You shouldn't go home late."

→ Tom advised me **not to go** home late.

(*Tom khuyên tôi không nên về nhà trễ.*)

Peter said to me, "I will help you."

→ Peter **promised** to help me. (*Peter hứa giúp tôi.*)

4. Câu cảm thán (Exclamation)

Câu cảm thán thường được thuật lại bằng động từ *exclaim, say that.*

Ví dụ: Peter said, "How beautiful your dress is!"

→ Peter **exclaimed / said** (that) my dress **was** beautiful.

(*Peter thốt lên / nói rằng áo tôi đẹp quá.*)

5. Câu hỗn hợp (Mixed types)

Khi đổi câu hỗn hợp sang câu gián tiếp ta đổi theo từng phần, dùng động từ giới thiệu riêng cho từng phần.

Ví dụ: Peter said, "Hi, Mary. How are you?"

→ Peter greeted Mary and asked how she was.

(*Peter chào Mary và hỏi cô ấy có khỏe không.*)

Peter said, "What time is it? I must go now."

→ Peter asked what time it was and said that he had to go then.

(*Peter hỏi mấy giờ và nói anh ấy phải đi.*)

MULTIPLE CHOICE

Choose a, b, c, or d that best completes the sentence, or that has the closest meaning to the original one.

1. She told the boys _____ on the grass.
a. do not play b. not playing c. did not play d. not to play
2. The teacher told Jim _____.
a. to stop talking b. stop talking c. stops talking d. stopped talking

3. The mother told her son _____ so impolitely.
a. not behave b. not to behave c. not behaving d. did not behave
4. He asked _____ him the books he needed.
a. her to lend b. she to lend c. she has lent d. she lends
5. She told him _____.
a. patient b. to be patient c. was patient d. that being patient
6. Tom told me that they _____ meat since _____.
a. have not eaten / last year b. did not eat / the following year
c. had not eaten / the year before d. would not eat / the next year
7. She said she _____ take me home after school.
a. would b. did c. must d. had
8. I have ever told you he _____ unreliable.
a. is b. were c. had been d. would be
9. John said he had worked on the report since _____.
a. yesterday b. two days ago c. the day before d. the next day
10. John told me that _____.
a. I must go now b. he must go now c. he had to go now d. he had to go then
11. She said she _____.
a. was very tired last night b. was very tired the night before
c. had been very tired last night d. had been very tired the night before
12. John said that he had worked as a computer programmer five years _____.
a. ago b. before c. later d. then
13. They said that they _____ their parents to repaint the house at 10 o'clock the previous day.
a. had helped b. was helping
c. have been helping d. had been helping
14. The teacher advised his students _____ that book carefully because it _____ good for _____.
a. to read / was / them b. read / is / him
c. that reading / be / us d. to read / was / you
15. John said, "It is hot. Please open the window, Mary."
a. John asked Mary it was hot and open the window.
b. John said it was hot and asked Mary to open the window.
c. John asked Mary it was hot to open the window.
d. John said it was hot Mary to open the window.
16. I _____ you everything I am doing, and you have to do the same.
a. will tell b. would tell c. told d. was telling
17. John said that his brother _____ at home then.
a. is b. was c. were d. has been
18. John told me that he _____ his best in the exam _____.
a. would do / the day before b. had done / the following day
c. will do / tomorrow d. would do / the following day
19. John wanted to know if I was leaving the _____ Saturday.
a. following b. ago c. previous d. before

33. He wanted to know _____ for a picnic the previous morning.
 a. if we had been going b. that if we had been going
 c. we were going d. that we were going
34. He asked his sister _____.
 a. that she needs any help b. whether you need any help
 c. if she needed any help d. if did she need any help
35. John asked us not to make so much noise _____ he was working.
 a. and that if b. and c. and that d. and added that
36. He asked me _____ Robert and I said I did not know _____.
 a. that did I know / who were Robert b. that I knew / who Robert were
 c. if I knew / who Robert was d. whether I knew / who was Robert
37. Johnny said _____ he had had more money he would have rebuilt his house.
 a. if that b. that if c. that d. whether that
38. Mary told me _____ home at that moment she _____ her parents with the farm work.
 a. that if she was / had helped
 b. if she were / will have helped
 c. that if she had been / would have helped
 d. that she had been / would have helped
39. Jane asked her teacher _____ the homework that week.
 a. if she had to do b. if she has to do
 c. that she must do d. if did she have to do
40. The host asked Peter _____ tea or coffee.
 a. whether he preferred b. that he preferred
 c. did he prefer d. if he prefers
41. Tim asked Sarah _____ English so far.
 a. she had been learning how long b. how long was she learning
 c. how long she has been learning d. how long she had been learning
42. "Teacher, may I go out?" the student said.
 a. The student asked his teacher for permission to go out.
 b. The student told his teacher to go out.
 c. The student suggested his teacher go out.
 d. The student wanted to get a recommendation to go out.
43. "Hurry up! Do it quickly!" the group leader _____.
 a. advised b. urged c. agreed d. promised
44. "Waiter, please bring me some more tea," the customer _____.
 a. begged b. ordered c. promised d. urged
45. "Go on, Susan! Apply the job," the father.
 a. The father invited Susan to apply the job
 b. The father denied applying the job.
 c. The father encouraged Susan to apply the job.
 d. The father wanted Susan not to apply the job.
46. "Let's go out for a drink," said Peter.
 a. Peter suggested going out for a drink. b. Peter let us go out for a drink.
 c. Peter promised to go out for a drink. d. Peter thanked on having a drink.

47. Mary apologized the teacher for being late for class.
- "I will be late," Mary said to the teacher.
 - "I won't be late," Mary said to the teacher.
 - "Excuse me for being late, sir," Mary said to the teacher.
 - "I won't be late for the class," Mary said to the teacher.
48. "____," my father advised me.
- You ought to work harder
 - I would rather work harder
 - It is my duty to work harder
 - It is worth working harder
49. "Thank you very much for your help, Tom," said Mary.
- Mary thanked Tom for helping her.
 - Mary told Tom to help her.
 - Mary wanted Tom to help her and said thanks.
 - Mary would like Tom to help her.
50. "What a beautiful dress you have, Mary!" Peter said.
- Peter complimented Mary on her beautiful dress.
 - Peter said what did Mary have a beautiful dress.
 - Peter asked Mary to have a beautiful dress.
 - Peter advised Mary to have a beautiful dress.

MODULE 14

GERUNDS AND INFINITIVES

(Danh động từ và động từ nguyên mẫu)

I. GERUND (Danh động từ)

Danh động từ (gerund) là hình thức động từ thêm **-ing**. Danh động từ có thể làm:

1. Chủ ngữ (subjects)

Ví dụ: **Swimming** is good for our health. (*Boi lội tốt cho sức khỏe.*)

2. Tân ngữ (objects)

- Danh động từ làm tân ngữ trực tiếp sau các động từ: admit (*thú nhận*), appreciate (*cảm kích*), avoid (*tránh*), delay (*hoãn lại*), deny (*phủ nhận*), discuss (*thảo luận*), enjoy (*thích*), imagine (*tưởng tượng*), involve (*có liên quan*), keep (*giữ, cứ*), mention (*đề cập*), mind (*phiên*), miss (*bỏ lỡ*), postpone (*hoãn lại*), practice (*thực hành*), recall (*nhớ lại*), recollect (*nhớ lại*), report (*báo cáo*), resent (*không hài lòng*), resist (*phản đối*), risk (*liều lĩnh*), suggest (*đề nghị*), tolerate (*chịu đựng*).

Ví dụ: We discussed **selling** the old car.

(*Chúng tôi đã bàn về việc bán chiếc xe hơi cũ.*)

He admitted **cheating** on the test.

(*Anh ta thú nhận việc gian lận trong kỳ thi.*)

- Danh động từ làm tân ngữ của giới từ.
+ Adjective + preposition + Gerund
+ Noun + preposition + Gerund
+ Verb + preposition + Gerund

Ví dụ: Mary is crazy about **playing** tennis. (*Mary rất thích chơi tennis.*)
There's no interest in **writing** letters. (*Viết thư chẳng có gì thú vị cả.*)
Sue dreams of **being** a pop star. (*Sue mơ trở thành ngôi sao nhạc Pop.*)

- Danh động từ được dùng sau các cụm từ: *be busy, can't/ couldn't help, can't stand/ bear/ face, feel like, it's no good/ use, spend time, there's no point in, it's (not) worth.*

Ví dụ: He is busy **reading** the paper. (*Anh ấy bận đọc báo.*)
She couldn't help **laughing**. (*Cô ấy không nhịn được cười.*)

3. Bổ ngữ của chủ ngữ hoặc tân ngữ (subjective/ objective complements)

- Danh động từ làm bổ ngữ của chủ ngữ.

Ví dụ: My favorite sport is **swimming**. (*Bơi lội là môn thể thao yêu thích của tôi.*)

- Danh động từ làm bổ ngữ của tân ngữ, sau một số động từ: *call, catch, discover, feel, find, hear, get, imagine, keep, leave, notice, see, send, set, stop, watch.*

Ví dụ: I saw him **crossing** the street. (*Tôi thấy anh ấy băng qua đường.*)

II. TO INFINITIVE VERB (Động từ nguyên mẫu có TO)

Động từ nguyên mẫu có to được dùng làm:

1. Chủ ngữ (subjects)

Ví dụ: **To swim** is good for our health. (*Bơi lội tốt cho sức khỏe.*)

- * Trong tiếng Anh hiện đại, cấu trúc với chủ ngữ giả *it* thường được dùng hơn.

2. Tân ngữ (objects)

- To-infinitive làm tân ngữ trực tiếp sau các động từ: *afford (có đủ khả năng), agree (đồng ý), arrange (sắp xếp), appear (hóa ra là), ask (yêu cầu), attempt (nỗ lực), care (quan tâm), choose (chọn), claim (thừ nhận), decide (quyết định), demand (yêu cầu), deserve (xứng đáng), expect (mong muốn), fail (thất bại), happen (tình cờ), hesitate (ngập ngừng), hope (hy vọng), intend (dự định), learn (học), manage (xoay xở), neglect (sao lãng), offer (cho), plan (có kế hoạch), prepare (chuẩn bị), pretend (giả vờ), promise (hứa), propose (đề nghị), refuse (từ chối), seem (hình như), swear (thề), tend (có khuynh hướng), threaten (dọa), vow (thề), wait (chờ), want (muốn), wish (ước mơ), would like (muốn, thích), yearn (khát khao), urge (thúc giục)*

Ví dụ: We decided **to have** a baby. (*Chúng tôi quyết định có con.*)

They plan **to go** abroad next year. (*Năm sau họ định đi nước ngoài.*)

- To-infinitive cũng được dùng sau các cụm từ: *to make up one's mind, to take care, to make sure, to take the trouble,...*

Ví dụ: I've made up my mind **to be** a teacher.

(*Tôi đã quyết định sẽ làm giáo viên.*)

- To-infinitive thường được dùng sau các tính từ diễn tả cảm xúc, phản ứng, và một số các tính từ thông dụng khác.

Ví dụ: I'm curious **to know** what he said. (Tôi muốn biết anh ấy đã nói gì.)
It's nice **to meet** you here. (Thật vui khi gặp bạn ở đây.)

- To-infinitive dùng sau các nghi vấn từ trong lời nói gián tiếp (ngoại trừ *why*).

Ví dụ: I do not know what **to do**. (Tôi không biết phải làm gì?)

Can you tell me how **to get** to the bus stop?

(Làm ơn chỉ tôi làm thế nào để đến trạm xe buýt.)

3. Bổ ngữ của chủ ngữ hoặc tân ngữ (subjective/ objective complements)

- To-infinitive làm bổ ngữ của chủ ngữ.

Ví dụ: What you have to do is **to work** harder.

(Những gì bạn phải làm là học hành chăm chỉ hơn.)

- To-infinitive làm bổ ngữ của tân ngữ, sau động từ + tân ngữ: *advise, allow, ask, assume, beg, believe, cause, challenge, command, compel, consider, enable, encourage, expect, find, forbid, force, get, guess, hate, help, imagine, intend, instruct, invite, know, lead, like, leave, love, mean, need, observe, order, permit, prefer, persuade, remind, request, suspect, teach, tell, tempt, think, trust, urge, understand, want, warn, wish,...*

Ví dụ: My mother wants me **to become** a doctor. (Mẹ tôi muốn tôi trở thành bác sĩ.)

III. BARE INFINITIVE VERB (Động từ nguyên mẫu không *to*)

Động từ nguyên mẫu không *to* được dùng:

- Sau các trợ động từ tình thái (modal verbs).

Ví dụ: We must **go** now. (Giờ chúng tôi phải đi.)

- Sau các động từ: *let, make, help, see, hear, feel, watch, notice* + tân ngữ.

Ví dụ: We saw her **get** off the bus. (Chúng tôi thấy cô ta bước xuống xe buýt.)

The boss made us **work** so hard. (Ông chủ bắt chúng tôi làm việc nhiều quá.)

But: She was seen **to get** off the bus.

We were made **to work** so hard (by the boss).

- * Sau *help* + object có thể là một động từ nguyên mẫu có *to* hoặc không *to*.

- Sau các cụm động từ *had better, would rather, had sooner* và sau *why* hoặc *why not*.

Ví dụ: I would rather **stay** at home. (Tôi thích ở nhà hơn.)

Why not **stay** for lunch? (Sao không ở lại ăn trưa?)

IV. GERUND, TO INFINITIVE, OR BARE INFINITIVE (Danh động từ, động từ nguyên mẫu có *to* hay động từ nguyên mẫu không *to*)

- **see, hear, feel,...** + O + $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{bare- inf. (chỉ sự hoàn tất của hành động)} \\ \text{V-ing (chỉ sự tiếp diễn của hành động)} \end{array} \right.$

Ví dụ: Mary heard the boy **cough**. (Mary nghe thằng bé ho.)

They saw the thief **breaking** into the house.

(Họ thấy tên trộm đang đột nhập vào nhà.)

- **advise, recommend, allow, permit, encourage, require** < + object + to-infinitive
< + V-ing
Ví dụ: They do not permit us **to smoke** here.
(Họ không cho chúng tôi hút thuốc ở đây.)
They do not permit **smoking** here. *(Họ không cho hút thuốc ở đây.)*
- **forget / remember** < + to infinitive (chỉ hành động ở tương lai)
< + V-ing (chỉ hành động đã qua)
Ví dụ: Remember **to call** Peter. *(Nhớ gọi điện cho Peter đấy.)*
I remember **calling** him yesterday. *(Tôi nhớ là đã gọi cho anh ấy hôm qua.)*
- **stop** < + to infinitive (ngừng việc này để làm việc khác):
< + V-ing (thôi không làm nữa)
Ví dụ: He stopped **to go** home early. *(Anh ấy nghỉ để về nhà sớm)*
He stopped **working** because he was tired. *(Anh ấy nghỉ làm vì anh ấy mệt.)*
- **try** < + to infinitive (cố gắng - chỉ sự nỗ lực)
< + V-ing (thử - chỉ sự thử nghiệm)
Ví dụ: He always tries **to learn** better. *(Anh ấy luôn cố học giỏi hơn.)*
Sam tried **opening** the lock with a paperclip. *(Sam thử mở cửa bằng cái kẹp giấy.)*
- **mean** < + to infinitive (chỉ dự định hoặc ý định)
< + V-ing (chỉ sự liên quan hoặc kết quả)
Ví dụ: I meant **to go** earlier. *(Tôi đã định đi sớm hơn.)*
This new order will mean **working** overtime.
(Mệnh lệnh mới này có nghĩa là phải làm thêm giờ.)
- **need** < + to infinitive (nghĩa chủ động)
< + V-ing (nghĩa bị động)
Ví dụ: You need **to do** everything with care.
(Bạn cần làm mọi việc thật cẩn thận.)
Everything needs **doing** (= to be done) with care.
(Mọi việc cần được làm thật cẩn thận.)
- **go on** < + to infinitive (chỉ sự thay đổi của hành động)
< + V-ing (chỉ sự liên tục của hành động)
Ví dụ: She stopped talking about that and went on **to describe** her other problems. *(Cô ta thôi không nói về điều đó nữa mà chuyển sang mô tả một vấn đề khác.)*
She went on **talking** about her illness until we all went to sleep.
(Cô ấy cứ nói mãi về căn bệnh của mình cho đến khi chúng tôi đi ngủ.)
- **Begin, start, like, love, hate, continue, cannot / could not bear** có thể được theo sau bởi động từ nguyên mẫu hoặc danh động từ, không có sự khác biệt về nghĩa.

Ví dụ: I began to learn/ learning English three years ago.

(Tôi bắt đầu học tiếng Anh cách đây 3 năm.)

They like dancing/ to dance. (Họ thích khiêu vũ.)

He can't bear being/ to be lonely. (Anh ấy không chịu được cô đơn.)

MULTIPLE CHOICE

Choose a, b, c, or d that best completes the sentence.

1. They refused _____ to Tim's proposal. They decided _____ their work.
a. to listen / continuing b. to listen / to continue
c. listening / to continue d. listening / continuing
2. I enjoy _____ to a number of programs on the radio. I am also fond of _____ novels.
a. to listen / to read b. listening / reading
c. to listen / reading d. listening / to read
3. No one will leave the classroom until the guilty student admits _____ the money.
a. steal b. stealing c. to steal d. stolen
4. Jack Anderson was caught _____ a match at the time of the fire. He was accused of _____ the fire.
a. to hold / set b. held / setting c. holding / to set d. holding / setting
5. I cannot imagine you _____ married to Peter. He might make you _____ unhappy.
a. to get / are b. get / being c. got / to be d. getting / be
6. Her boss promised _____ her a raise because she never minds _____ the night shift.
a. offering / work b. offered / to work c. to offer / working d. offer / worked
7. He disagrees _____ a new car. He prefers _____ by bus to by car.
a. to buy / travel b. buying / to travel
c. to buy / travelling d. bought / traveled
8. The questions are easy _____. We hope _____ high scores.
a. to answer / to get b. answering / to get
c. to answer / getting d. answered / got
9. The man asked me how _____ to the airport. He said he had to _____ the 9.00 plane to Paris.
a. getting / taken b. to get / take c. got / taking d. get / took
10. You were the last one _____ the office. Did you see anyone _____ the building?
a. leaving / to enter b. to leave / enter c. left / entering d. leave / entered
11. It is no use _____ the car. It would be cheaper _____ a new one.
a. repair / bought b. repaired / buy c. to repair / buying d. repairing / to buy
12. She wanted _____ home, but her boss made her _____ until the work was finished.
a. to go / staying b. go / stayed c. going / to stay d. to go / stay
13. I will make an effort _____.
a. stopping smoking b. stop smoke c. to stop smoking d. stop smoking
14. I am not sure if I have met Mr. Martino, but I remember _____ his name.
a. hear b. to hear c. hearing d. heard

31. I remember _____ John promised _____, but now he was nowhere _____.
- a. hearing / to come / to be seen b. hear / coming / being seen
c. hearing / to come / to see d. to hear / come / been seen
32. My father continued _____ although the doctor advised him _____ the habit several times.
- a. smoking / to quit b. to smoke / quit
c. smoke / quitting d. for smoking / of quitting
33. He has arranged _____ the visitors at the factory. It is necessary that he _____ on time.
- a. to meet / be b. meeting / to be c. meet / being d. met / was
34. I have an important thing _____ you before _____ you this document.
- a. told / given b. tell / give c. telling / to give d. to tell / giving
35. She was hesitant _____ the coach of her problem and she thanked her coach _____ her _____ with the pressure.
- a. telling / to help / deal b. tell / helping / dealing
c. told / help / dealing d. to tell / for helping / to deal
36. Thanks to effective birth control methods, women can delay _____ children and they have more time _____ part in social work.
- a. have / taken b. having / to take c. had / take d. to have / taking
37. Avoid _____ those mistakes again when _____.
- a. to make / write b. make / to write c. making / writing d. made / written
38. We will have our house _____. My cousins will come and help us _____ the work.
- a. to repaint/ doing b. repainted/ do c. repainting/ to do d. repainted/ doing
39. We postponed _____ any decision in the meeting.
- a. make b. to make c. making d. made
40. I am busy _____. I would rather not _____ out for lunch.
- a. working / go b. to work / to go c. worked / going d. work / going
41. African people are used _____ barefoot so they get very rough skin.
- a. to walk b. to walking c. walked d. walking
42. She was so nice that he couldn't help _____ in love with her.
- a. fall b. falling c. to fall d. fallen
43. I do not mind _____ you whenever I finish _____ on my reports.
- a. to help / working b. helping / to work
c. to help / to work d. helping / working
44. Jean detested _____. She often refused _____ her photographs taken.
- a. photographed / have b. to be photographed / had
c. be photographed / having d. being photographed / to have
45. I happened _____ John _____ the street yesterday.
- a. to see / to cross b. see / crossed c. to see / crossing d. seeing / to cross
46. The robbers forced the bank manager _____ the safe.
- a. open b. to open c. opening d. opened
47. Your responsibility includes _____ reservations.
- a. take b. to take c. taking d. taken
48. What about _____ home instead of _____ the car?
- a. to walk / taking b. walking / to take c. walking / taking d. to walk / to take

49. The police recommend _____ along that street at night.
 a. not walking b. not to walk c. not walk d. do not walk
50. Neil Armstrong was the first _____ in a spaceship. Many people still recall _____ the scene when he placed his first step on the Moon.
 a. flew / see b. to fly / seeing c. flown / seeing d. flying / to see

MODULE 15

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS (So sánh tính từ và trạng từ)

I. Equality (So sánh bằng)

AS + adjective / adverb + AS
 not AS / SO + adjective / adverb + AS

Ví dụ: I am **as tall as** my brother. (*Tôi cao bằng anh của tôi.*)

He cannot run **so/ as fast as** his friends.

(*Anh ấy không chạy nhanh bằng các bạn.*)

- *As much / many (+ noun) as* được dùng để nói về số lượng.

Ví dụ: I have not read **as many books as** my teacher advises me.

(*Tôi không đọc nhiều sách như thầy tôi khuyên.*)

John does not earn **as much money as** his wife does.

(*John không kiếm được nhiều tiền bằng vợ.*)

- Cấu trúc *the same (+ noun) as* cũng có thể được dùng.

Ví dụ: Laura's salary is **the same as** mine. or Laura gets **the same** salary **as** me. (*Lương của Laura bằng lương của tôi.*)

II. Comparative (So sánh hơn)

1. So sánh nhiều hơn

- Thêm *-er* vào sau tính từ/ trạng từ có một âm tiết (short adjective/ adverb) và tính từ có hai âm tiết tận cùng bằng *y, et, le, er, ow*.

- Thêm *more* vào trước tính từ/ trạng từ có hai âm tiết trở lên (long adjective/ adverb), ngoại trừ các tính từ tận cùng bằng *y, et, le, er, ow*.

short adjective / adverb + ER + than
 MORE + long adjective / adverb + than

Ví dụ: Country life is **simpler than** city life.

(*Đời sống ở nông thôn đơn giản hơn đời sống ở thành phố.*)

John works **harder than** his brother. (*John làm việc chăm chỉ hơn anh trai anh ấy.*)

Gold is **more expensive than** silver. (*Vàng đắt hơn bạc.*)

Jane speaks French **more fluently than** Mary.

(*Jane nói tiếng Pháp lưu loát hơn Mary.*)

- Với danh từ: **more + noun + than**

Ví dụ: I have **more books than** Peter does. (Tôi có nhiều sách hơn Peter.)

2. So sánh ít hơn

LESS + adjective + than

Ví dụ: This picture is **less valuable than** that one.

(Bức tranh này ít giá trị hơn bức tranh kia.)

- Với danh từ: **less + noun + than**

Ví dụ: I have **less free time than** I used to!

(Tôi có ít thời gian rảnh rỗi hơn trước đây.)

III. Superlative (So sánh nhất)

1. So sánh nhiều nhất

- Thêm *-est* vào sau tính từ/ trạng từ ngắn (short adjective/ adverb) và tính từ có hai âm tiết tận cùng bằng *y, et, le, er, ow*.

- Thêm *most* vào trước tính từ/ trạng từ dài (long adjective/ adverb).

the + short adjective / adverb + EST
the MOST + long adjective / adverb

Ví dụ: Tom is **the tallest** in our class. (Tom là người cao nhất lớp tôi.)

Which watch is **the most expensive** in your shop?

(Cái đồng hồ nào đắt nhất trong cửa hàng của anh.)

- So sánh nhất được dùng khi so sánh từ ba đối tượng trở lên. Khi trong nhóm chỉ có hai đối tượng, ta thường dùng so sánh hơn.

Ví dụ: I like Betty and Maud, but I think Maud is **the nicer** of the two.

2. So sánh ít nhất

the least + adjective

Ví dụ: This hotel is **the least comfortable** of the three.

(Khách sạn này ít tiện nghi nhất trong ba khách sạn.)

* Lưu ý

- *Much, far, a lot* được dùng để nhấn mạnh so sánh hơn.

Ví dụ: She is **much/ far/ a lot** more intelligent than I think.

(Cô ấy thông minh hơn tôi nghĩ nhiều.)

- Trong hình thức so sánh, tính từ ngắn đứng trước tính từ dài.

Ví dụ: My car is **faster and more comfortable** than hers.

(Xe hơi của tôi nhanh hơn và tiện nghi hơn xe của cô ấy.)

• Hình thức so sánh bất quy tắc

good / well	→ better	→ the best
bad / badly	→ worse	→ the worst
many / much	→ more	→ the most
little	→ less	→ the least
far	→ farther / further	→ the farthest / the furthest

IV. Double comparative (so sánh kép)

1. So sánh lũy tiến (càng ngày càng)

**short adj / adv + ER + and + short adj / adv + ER
MORE / LESS and MORE / LESS + long adj / adv**

Ví dụ: The summer is coming. It gets **hotter and hotter**.

(Mùa hè đang đến. Trời càng ngày càng nóng.)

He is shooting **more and more accurately**.

(Anh ta ném bóng ngày càng chính xác.)

The environment is **less and less pure**.

(Môi trường ngày càng ít trong lành.)

2. So sánh đồng tiến (càng ... càng)

the + comparative adj / adv + the comparative adj / adv

Ví dụ: **The shorter** the line (is), **the faster** the service (is).

(Hàng càng ngắn, phục vụ càng nhanh.)

The more dangerous it is, **the more** I like it.

(Việc càng nguy hiểm tôi càng thích.)

More, less có thể được dùng với danh từ trong cấu trúc này.

Ví dụ: **The more trees** we cut, **the more floods** we suffer.

(Chúng ta càng chặt nhiều cây, chúng ta càng bị nhiều lũ lụt.)

The less you work, **the less money** you earn.

(Bạn càng làm việc ít, bạn càng kiếm được ít tiền.)

MULTIPLE CHOICE

Choose a, b, c, or d that best completes the sentence.

- New York is _____ Seattle.
a. larger than b. more large than c. as larger than d. more larger than
- Our house is _____ yours.
a. as big than b. as bigger as c. bigger than d. more big than
- City life is _____ country life.
a. as busier as b. busier than c. more busier than d. most busy as
- Of the two, the round table is _____.
a. the nicest b. a nice one c. nicer d. the nicer
- I feel _____ better than I did yesterday.
a. a little b. more c. a few d. many
- There is nothing _____ travelling abroad.
a. more interesting than b. more interesting as
c. as interesting than d. the most interesting than
- He finds physics _____ other science subjects.
a. far more difficult than b. much difficulter than
c. too more difficult than d. more much difficult than

8. His car is _____ mine.
 a. more expensive and faster than b. faster and more expensive than
 c. more faster and expensive than d. more expensive than and faster than
9. The cuisine of France is _____.
 a. more famous than that of England b. famous than the cuisine of England
 c. more famous than which of England d. as famous than that of England
10. Russian is a _____ language to learn than English is.
 a. difficult b. more difficult
 c. most difficult d. more and more difficult
11. He has _____ his sister does.
 a. as friends as b. more friends as
 c. many friends than d. more friends than
12. There are _____.
 a. twice as much computers in our office as there was
 b. as twice many computers in our office as they were
 c. twice as many computers in our office than there used to be
 d. twice as many computers in our office as there used to be
13. Silver is not _____ gold.
 a. as much heavy as b. so heavy than
 c. more heavier as d. so heavy as
14. I think cow is _____ of all animals.
 a. most useful b. less useful c. the most useful d. the more useful
15. The new machines use _____ the old ones.
 a. less water and electricity more than b. less water and electricity than
 c. less water and electricity d. as less water and electricity than
16. Try to do this test. It is _____ than the others.
 a. less difficult b. less and less difficult
 c. least difficult d. more and more difficult
17. Summer is _____ season of the year.
 a. hottest b. the hottest c. the hotter d. the more hottest
18. It is one of _____ books I have ever had.
 a. most useful b. the most useful
 c. the most useful than d. the most useful as
19. Of all athletes, Alex is _____.
 a. the less qualified b. the less and less qualified
 c. the more qualified d. the least qualified
20. Mary was _____ of the two sisters.
 a. the clever b. as clever as c. the cleverer d. the cleverest
21. _____ you get to the cinema, _____ seat you have.
 a. The sooner / the better b. The soon / the good
 c. The soonest / the best d. Sooner / Better
22. The picnic was _____ I had expected.
 a. more a hundred times fun than b. a hundred times fun more than
 c. a hundred times more fun than d. more fun than a hundred times

23. _____ he drank, _____ he became.
 a. More / more violent
 b. The most / the most violent
 c. The more / the more violent
 d. The less / less violent
24. She is _____ her colleagues.
 a. as intelligent than
 b. so more intelligent than
 c. few more intelligent than
 d. a lot more intelligent than
25. After three months' practice, Peter can run _____.
 a. fast and fast
 b. faster and faster
 c. the more and more fast
 d. more and more fast
26. Her husband is _____ she is.
 a. ten years older than
 b. as ten years old as
 c. older ten years than
 d. so many ten years older
27. Rolls Royce is _____ any other car.
 a. much more expensive than
 b. as much expensive than
 c. so much expensive as
 d. very more expensive than
28. They are _____ they used to be.
 a. less wealthy as
 b. as less wealthy as
 c. less wealthy than
 d. less wealthy more than
29. Today women do not have _____ they used to years ago.
 a. as much children as
 b. as many children as
 c. as children as
 d. more children as
30. _____ money he makes, _____ useless things he buys.
 a. More / more
 b. The more / the more
 c. More / the more
 d. The most / the most
31. Because of the heavy rain, the drivers drove _____.
 a. carefully and carefully
 b. more and more carefully
 c. more than carefully
 d. most and most carefully
32. She is _____ in the staff.
 a. the most good
 b. the far better
 c. most the best
 d. by far the best
33. He is _____ person I have ever met.
 a. quite the most intelligent
 b. far more intelligent
 c. far intelligent as
 d. as intelligent
34. We are _____ involved in charity than they are.
 a. most
 b. as
 c. as far
 d. far more
35. He is _____ his wife.
 a. twice as heavy as
 b. as twice heavy as
 c. as heavy as twice
 d. twice as heavy than
36. _____ he insisted he was innocent, _____ they seemed to believe him.
 a. The more / the less
 b. More / less
 c. The most / the least
 d. Most / least
37. Kate is _____ her sister.
 a. more nice and intelligent than
 b. nicer and less intelligent as
 c. nicer and more intelligent than
 d. as nice and intelligent than

38. Among the students in my class, Peter is _____.
 a. most active b. the most active c. the more active d. more active
39. _____ a person wears eyeglasses, _____ on them he tends to be.
 a. Longer / more dependent b. The longest / the most dependent
 c. The longer / more dependent d. The longer / the more dependent
40. In this summer there are _____ there was last year.
 a. so few visitors as b. as few visitors as
 c. as few visitors than d. less few visitors as
41. We can satisfy our basic necessities _____ we could in the past.
 a. as easily than b. easilier than c. more easily than d. less easily as
42. The organizers hope to raise _____ for charity.
 a. more as £6 million b. as much £6 million as
 c. as much as £6 million d. as more as £6 million
43. It was _____ to the shops than I expected.
 a. far b. farer c. farther d. farthest
44. He was _____ interested in science.
 a. the little b. the least c. the less d. least
45. _____ planet to see in the night sky is Venus.
 a. The easy b. The easiest c. The more easy d. The easier
46. John's grades are really bad. ~ Yes, but Tim are _____.
 a. so worse b. badder c. worst d. worse
47. Which country is _____: Mexico or Costa Rica?
 a. big b. the bigger c. bigger d. the biggest
48. Wyoming has even _____ North Dakota has.
 a. more few residents than b. fewer residents than
 c. fewer residents as d. residents fewer than
49. He spent a year in India and loves spicy food. _____ the food is, _____ he likes it.
 a. The hottest / the most b. The hotter / the more
 c. Hottest / most d. Hotter / more
50. Although several methods have been applied, the water seems to be _____.
 a. more than polluted b. so as polluted
 c. more as polluted d. more and more polluted

MODULE 16

RELATIVE CLAUSES (*Mệnh đề quan hệ*)

Mệnh đề quan hệ (Relative clause), còn gọi là mệnh đề tính ngữ (Adjective clause), được dùng như một tính từ để bổ nghĩa cho danh từ đứng trước. Mệnh đề quan hệ được đặt ngay sau danh từ mà nó bổ nghĩa và được bắt đầu bằng các đại từ quan hệ (relative pronouns) *who, whom, which, that, whose* hoặc các trạng từ quan hệ (relative adverbs) *when, where, why*.

Ví dụ: The woman **whom I love best** is my mother.
(Người phụ nữ mà tôi yêu thương nhất chính là mẹ tôi.)

I. Cách dùng đại từ và trạng từ quan hệ.

- WHO: làm chủ ngữ hoặc tân ngữ, thay thế cho danh từ chỉ người.

Ví dụ: Do you know the man **who** is standing over there.
(Bạn có biết người đàn ông đứng ở kia không?)

- WHOM: làm tân ngữ, thay thế cho danh từ chỉ người.

Ví dụ: Peter keeps talking about the girl **whom/ who** he met last week.
(Peter cứ nói mãi về cô gái mà anh ấy gặp tuần rồi.)

- WHICH: làm chủ ngữ hoặc tân ngữ, thay thế cho danh từ chỉ vật.

Ví dụ: Please recommend me a restaurant **which** serves seafood.
(Làm ơn giới thiệu cho tôi một nhà hàng bán hải sản.)

- THAT: làm chủ ngữ hoặc tân ngữ, thay cho cả danh từ chỉ người và danh từ chỉ vật.

Ví dụ: Do you know the man **who/ that** is standing over there.
Peter keeps talking about the girl **whom/ that** he met last week.
Please recommend me a restaurant **which/ that** serves seafood.

That luôn được dùng sau cụm danh từ gồm cả người lẫn vật, sau các đại từ *everything, something, anything, all, little, much, none* và dạng so sánh nhất.

Ví dụ: The firemen managed to rescue the old woman and her cats **that** were stuck in the burning house. (Lính cứu hỏa đã tìm được cách cứu bà lão và mấy con mèo của bà bị kẹt trong ngôi nhà đang cháy.)
She is the most beautiful girl **that** I've ever met.
(Cô ấy là cô gái đẹp nhất mà tôi từng gặp.)

- WHOSE: chỉ sự sở hữu

Ví dụ: Peter does not like the secretary **whose** ideas are contrary to his.
(Peter không thích người thư ký có ý kiến trái với anh ấy.)

- WHEN (= on/ at/ in which): thay cho danh từ chỉ thời gian

Ví dụ: Tell me the time **when** (= at which) we can depart.
(Cho tôi biết thời gian chúng ta có thể khởi hành.)

- WHERE (= at/ in/ from/ on which): thay cho danh từ chỉ nơi chốn

Ví dụ: Do you know the village where (in which) your father was born?
(Bạn có biết ngôi làng nơi cha bạn đã được sinh ra không?)

- WHY (= for which): dùng để chỉ lý do, thay cho *the reason*.

Ví dụ: That is the reason why (= for which) John refused to come.
(Đó là lý do tại sao John không chịu đến.)

II. Phân loại mệnh đề quan hệ.

1. Mệnh đề quan hệ giới hạn (Restrictive relative clause): cung cấp những thông tin quan trọng cần thiết để xác định danh từ hoặc cụm danh từ đứng trước.

Ví dụ: My father is the man **who understands me the most**.
(Bố tôi là người hiểu tôi nhất.)

Do you still remember the day **when we first met at university?**
(*Bạn còn nhớ ngày chúng ta gặp nhau lần đầu ở trường đại học không?*)

Đại từ quan hệ làm tân ngữ *who(m)*, *which*, *that* và trạng từ quan hệ *when*, *why* có thể được bỏ trong mệnh đề quan hệ giới hạn.

Ví dụ: He promised to lend me the book (~~which/that~~) he bought yesterday. (*Anh ấy hứa cho tôi mượn quyển sách anh ấy mua hôm qua.*)
Peter keeps talking about the girl (~~who/that~~) he met last week.

2. Mệnh đề quan hệ không giới hạn (Non-restrictive relative clause): cung cấp thêm thông tin về một người, một vật hoặc một sự việc đã được xác định. Mệnh đề quan hệ không giới hạn cách mệnh đề chính bằng dấu phẩy (,) hay dấu gạch ngang (-).

Ví dụ: Peter, **who is my new friend**, is an architect.

(*Peter, người bạn mới quen của tôi, là kiến trúc sư.*)

They like walking along the Thames, **which flows through London**. (*Họ thích đi dọc sông Thames, con sông chảy qua Luân Đôn.*)

- Không được bỏ các đại từ quan hệ làm tân ngữ và trạng từ quan hệ trong mệnh đề quan hệ không giới hạn.

Ví dụ: She met my brother, **whom** she later married.

(*Cô ấy gặp anh trai tôi, người mà sau đó cô ấy đã kết hôn.*)

[~~NOT She met my brother, she later married.~~]

- Không dùng THAT trong mệnh đề quan hệ không giới hạn.

Ví dụ: Ms. Pike, **who** is my form teacher, is very nice to her students.

(*Cô Pike, giáo viên chủ nhiệm của tôi, rất tử tế với học sinh.*)

[~~NOT Ms. Pike, that is my form teacher,...~~]

- Trong mệnh đề quan hệ không giới hạn, *which* có thể được dùng để bổ nghĩa cho cả câu.

Ví dụ: Peter failed again, **which** does not make us surprised.

(*Peter lại thất bại, điều này chẳng làm chúng tôi ngạc nhiên.*)

III. Giới từ trong mệnh đề quan hệ.

Trong mệnh đề quan hệ, giới từ có thể đứng trước đại từ quan hệ làm tân ngữ của giới từ (*whom*, *which*, *whose*) hoặc sau động từ (ngoại trừ *without*). Giới từ không được đặt trước *who* và *that*.

Ví dụ: The people **with whom** I was sitting were very noisy.

[~~NOT The people with who/that I was sitting...~~]

Or: The people (whom/ that) I was sitting **with** were very noisy.

(*Những người ngồi cùng với tôi rất ồn ào.*)

Khi giới từ là thành phần của cụm động từ thì không thể đem giới từ ra trước *whom*, *which*, *whose*.

Ví dụ: This is the book which I am **looking for**. (*Đây chính là cuốn sách tôi đang tìm.*) [~~NOT This is the book for which I am looking.~~]

IV. Dạng rút gọn của mệnh đề quan hệ

Mệnh đề quan hệ có thể được rút gọn bằng cách dùng:

1. Ngữ phân từ (participle phrase)

- Ngữ hiện tại phân từ (present participle phrase) được dùng khi động từ trong mệnh đề quan hệ ở thể chủ động (active), diễn đạt hành động đang diễn ra hoặc có tính thường xuyên, lâu dài.
Ví dụ: My sister is the girl **who is wearing a blue dress**.
→ My sister is the girl **wearing a blue dress**.
(*Chị tôi là cô gái mặc áo đầm xanh.*)
 - Ngữ quá khứ phân từ (past participle phrase) được dùng khi động từ trong mệnh đề quan hệ ở thể bị động (passive).
Ví dụ: The novel **which was written by Peter's father** is very interesting.
→ The novel **written by Peter's father** is very interesting.
(*Quyển tiểu thuyết mà bố Peter viết rất hay.*)
2. Cụm động từ nguyên mẫu (to-infinitive phrase)
To-infinitive có thể được dùng khi đại từ quan hệ làm chủ ngữ đứng sau *first, second, ..., last, next, only*, dạng so sánh nhất hoặc để chỉ mục đích, sự cho phép.
Ví dụ: Tom is the last agent **who left** the office yesterday evening.
→ Tom is the last agent **to leave** the office yesterday evening.
(*Tom là người sau cùng rời khỏi văn phòng chiều hôm qua.*)
Please take us to a cafeteria **where we can have** a delicious meal.
→ Please take us to a cafeteria **to have** a delicious meal.
(*Làm ơn đưa chúng tôi đến quán để ăn một bữa thật ngon.*)
3. Ngữ danh từ (noun phrase)
Ví dụ: Ms Young, **who is the school librarian**, often lends me reference books.
→ Ms Young, **the school librarian**, often lends me reference books.
(*Cô Young, thủ thư của trường, thường cho tôi mượn sách tham khảo.*)

MULTIPLE CHOICE

Choose a, b, c, or d that best completes the sentence.

- To calm his angry girlfriend, John offered an apology ____ Jane did not accept.
a. which b. who c. whom d. when
- Michelle screamed when she saw the spider _____ dangled from the one clean bathroom towel.
a. whom b. where c. that d. whose
- Brian said goodnight to his roommate _____ continued to play video games until his eyes were blurry with fatigue.
a. Justin, whom b. Justin who c. Justin, who d. Justin, that
- The children _____ skateboard in the street are especially noisy in the early evening.
a. who b. whom c. which d. whose
- We have many blessings for those _____ we are deeply grateful to.
a. whose b. whom c. that d. which
- Women _____ work are happier than those _____ don't work.
a. that / whom b. who / who c. whom / that d. whose / which

7. It took me a while to get used to people _____ eat pop-corn during the movie.
 a. who b. whom c. whose d. which
8. He is the man _____ I wanted to speak to and _____ name I'd forgotten.
 a. whose / whom b. that / which c. who / that d. whom / whose
9. This is the house _____ I lived when I first came to the US.
 a. in that b. in where c. where d. which in
10. It was in that house _____ we spent our childhood.
 a. where b. that c. when d. in which
11. The family _____ burnt in the fire was immediately given a suite in a hotel.
 a. which house b. the house of whom
 c. that house d. whose house
12. My friend eventually decided to get divorced, _____ upset me a lot.
 a. who b. why c. that d. which
13. I saw a lot of new people at the party, _____ seemed familiar.
 a. which b. that c. some of that d. some of whom
14. The reason _____ I have continued to work for that company is the job security.
 a. at which b. which c. why d. for that
15. The house _____ I grew up has just renovated.
 a. where b. in that c. which d. that
16. The old man and his two dogs _____ were seriously burnt in the fire last week have gradually recovered.
 a. who b. that c. which d. whom
17. The woman _____ hair is long and curly is the new secretary, Mrs. Chan.
 a. who b. whose c. that d. which
18. _____ used to be the tallest building in the world, is still a popular tourist attraction.
 a. The Empire State Building b. It is The Empire State Building, which
 c. The Empire State Building, that d. The Empire State Building, which
19. _____ was the first president of the United States, is a symbol of honesty, bravery, and patriotism.
 a. George Washington b. George Washington, that
 c. George Washington, who d. That was George Washington
20. It was Peter and Mary _____ often came to help me whenever I was in need.
 a. whose b. which c. that d. whom
21. _____ failed will have to retake the exam next week.
 a. Those b. Those who c. Who d. Those which
22. My favorite month is always February _____ we celebrate Valentine's Day and Presidents' Day.
 a. which b. where c. why d. when
23. Travelling on holiday, _____ I love to do, can be very expensive.
 a. which b. that c. when d. where
24. New York is a place _____ people of many different cultures live and work together.
 a. where b. that c. which d. in that

25. I could not remember the person about _____ you told me, so I could not talk to him.
 a. that b. who c. whom d. which
26. The book _____ author is now being shown in the news has become a bestseller.
 a. that b. which c. whose d. whom
27. Recommend me a nice restaurant _____ we can have an Italian dinner.
 a. which b. in that c. in where d. where
28. _____ is located at 68th and Park, is part of the City University of New York.
 a. Hunter College, which b. Hunter College which
 c. Hunter College, that d. Hunter College, where
29. If she cannot find _____ reliable to take care of her children, she may not join us.
 a. someone is b. someone which is
 c. who is d. someone who is
30. At last they were able to tow up the man and his car _____ crashed down the hill.
 a. whose b. which c. who d. that
31. Experts all agree that dreams _____ great anxiety and stress are called nightmare.
 a. when cause b. whom cause c. cause d. which cause
32. What's the name of the person _____ first landed on the moon?
 a. which b. who c. whose d. whom
33. Frank Smith, _____ son works for us, can provide an estimate.
 a. whose b. that c. which d. whom
34. _____ small two-winged insects, can spread fatal diseases like malaria and dengue fever.
 a. Mosquitoes are b. Mosquitoes, which are
 c. Mosquitoes, that are d. They are mosquitoes
35. That horrible incident occurred in 1967, _____ I was still a baby.
 a. when b. why c. where d. which
36. They are the most beautiful roses _____.
 a. I have ever seen b. whom I have ever seen
 c. that I have ever seen them d. where I have ever seen
37. The actor, _____ wife was also famous, was cast as the villain.
 a. whose b. which c. that d. whom
38. He is the man _____ last week.
 a. I met b. which I met c. whose I met d. where I met
39. My boss gave Peter, _____, the promotion.
 a. he had always preferred b. whom he had always preferred
 c. he had always preferred whom d. that he had always preferred
40. I did not like the book _____.
 a. whom John gave me b. when John gave me
 c. John gave me d. that John gave me it
41. The library did not have the book _____.
 a. for that I wanted b. whom I want c. I want d. whose I want
42. The basement is the room _____ most of my studying.
 a. where I do b. I do in c. in that I do d. I do

43. Frank Zappa, _____ one of the most creative artists in rock 'n roll, came from California.
 a. was b. who was c. whom was d. that was
44. I have found you the tutor _____.
 a. whom you were looking b. for whom you were looking
 c. for who you were looking d. that you were looking
45. He was always coming up with new ideas, most of _____ were absolutely impracticable.
 a. which b. that c. whom d. whose
46. _____ is a quality all human beings have.
 a. Creativity may take many forms
 b. Creativity, may take many forms,
 c. Creativity which may take many forms,
 d. Creativity, which may take many forms,
47. _____ in New York lead very busy lives.
 a. Those who live b. Who live c. Those live d. Those which live
48. _____ millions of immigrants live, is sometimes called a Melting Pot.
 a. New York City, which b. New York City that
 c. New York City, where d. New York City
49. The 1960's was the time _____ many Americans began to question the actions of their government.
 a. which b. when c. that d. where
50. It was in the 1970's _____ many new rights and freedoms had been gained.
 a. when b. that c. which d. in which

MODULE 17

ADVERB CLAUSES (*Mệnh đề trạng ngữ*)

1. Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian (Adverb clause of time)

Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian bắt đầu bằng: when (*khi*), as (*trong khi*, *khi*), as long as (*tới khi*), since (*từ khi*), until/ till (*cho đến khi*), while (*trong khi*), as soon as (*ngay khi*), once (*một khi*), whenever (*bất cứ lúc nào*), by (*lúc*, *vào lúc*), before (*trước khi*), after (*sau khi*), every time (*mỗi khi*), no sooner ... than (*ngay khi ...thì*), hardly ... when (*ngay khi ... thì*)

Ví dụ: **When I arrived**, he was talking on the phone.

(*Khi tôi đến anh ấy đang gọi điện thoại.*)

She was cooking **while I was doing my homework.**

(*Cô ấy nấu ăn trong khi tôi đang làm bài tập.*)

Before you go home, remember to turn of the air-conditioner.

(*Trước khi về nhà nhớ tắt máy điều hòa nhiệt độ.*)

* **Lưu ý:** Không dùng thì tương lai trong mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian.

Ví dụ: I'll drink a cup of coffee **before I leave.** (NOT ... ~~before I'll leave~~)

2. Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ nơi chốn (Adverb clause of place)

Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ nơi chốn bắt đầu bằng: where (ở đâu), wherever (bất cứ nơi đâu).

Ví dụ: **Wherever you go**, I am behind you.

(Bạn đi bất cứ đâu tôi cũng theo sau bạn.)

Sometimes, he drops by **where I am staying**.

(Thỉnh thoảng anh ấy ghé qua chỗ tôi ở.)

3. Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ lý do (Adverb clause of reason)

Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ lý do bắt đầu bằng: because, as, since, seeing that, due to the fact that, now that (do, vì, bởi vì).

Ví dụ: **As we forgot to take the map**, we got lost.

(Vì chúng tôi quên mang theo bản đồ nên chúng tôi bị lạc.)

Because he was seriously ill, they took him to hospital.

(Vì ông ấy bệnh nặng nên họ đưa ông ấy đi viện.)

[NOT ~~Because he was seriously ill, so they took him to hospital.~~]

Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ lý do có thể rút gọn thành cụm từ chỉ lý do (phrase of reason), bắt đầu bằng các giới từ *because of*, *due to*, *owing to*.

because of/ due to/ owing to + noun/ pronoun/ gerund phrase

Ví dụ: **Due to the bad weather**, the match was cancelled.

(Do thời tiết xấu nên trận đấu bị hủy bỏ.)

I stayed at home **because of feeling unwell**.

(Tôi ở nhà vì thấy không được khỏe.)

* **Lưu ý:** Dùng *because* khi muốn nhấn mạnh mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ lý do; dùng *as*, *since*, *seeing that*, *due to the fact that*, *now that* khi muốn nhấn mạnh mệnh đề chính.

For được dùng như *because*, nhưng trước *for* có dấu phẩy (,)

Ví dụ: John shook, **for** he was scared. (John run vì anh ấy sợ.)

4. Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ sự nhượng bộ (Adverb clause of concession)

Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ sự nhượng bộ bắt đầu bằng: though, although, even though, even if, in spite of/ despite the fact that (dù, mặc dù)

Ví dụ: **Although the course was difficult**, he passed with the highest marks. (Dù khóa học rất khó nhưng anh ấy vẫn đậu điểm cao nhất.)

[NOT ~~Although the course was difficult, but he passed with ...~~]

I'd quite like to go out, **though it is a bit late**.

(Tôi rất muốn đi chơi dù đã hơi khuya.)

Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ sự nhượng bộ có thể rút gọn thành cụm từ chỉ sự nhượng bộ (phrase of concession), bắt đầu bằng *in spite of*, *despite*.

despite/ in spite of + noun/ pronoun/ gerund

Ví dụ: The airport is being built **despite the residents' objection**.

(Bất chấp sự phản đối của cư dân, sân bay vẫn đang được xây.)

In spite of working hard, she failed her university exams again.

(Mặc dù học hành rất chăm chỉ, cô ấy vẫn lại thi rớt đại học.)

Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ sự nhượng bộ cũng có thể bắt đầu bằng *no matter*, *whatever*, *however* hoặc *adjective / adverb + as / though*.

Ví dụ: **No matter what you do**, don't touch this switch.

(*Bất kể bạn làm gì đi nữa cũng không được chạm vào nút này.*)

Rich as / though he is, he is unhappy.

(*Dù rất giàu, ông ta vẫn không hạnh phúc.*)

5. Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ cách thức (Adverb clause of manner)

Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ cách thức bắt đầu bằng: *as (như là, giống như là)*, *as if / as though (như thể là)*.

Ví dụ: He could not come **as he promised**.

(*Anh ấy không thể đến như đã hứa.*)

It looks **as if / as though it's going to rain**.

(*Trời trông như thể sắp mưa.*)

- **As if / as though** cũng có thể được dùng để diễn đạt một điều không có thật hoặc trái với thực tế.

a. Điều không có thật ở hiện tại

S + V + as if / as though + S + V (past simple)

Ví dụ: She dresses as if she **was** an actress. (*Cô ấy ăn mặc như thể cô ấy là diễn viên.*) → but she isn't an actress

He talks as though he **knew** where she was. (*Anh ấy nói như thể anh ấy biết cô ta ở đâu.*) → but he doesn't know

- * **Were** có thể được dùng thay cho *was* (với các chủ từ *I, he, she, it*) trong mệnh đề giả định.

Ví dụ: She dresses as if she **were** an actress.

b. Điều không có thật ở quá khứ

S + V + as if / as though + S + V (past perfect)

Ví dụ: He talked about New York as though he **had been** there before.

(*Anh ta kể về New York như thể anh ta đã ở đó trước đây.*)

6. Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ kết quả (Adverb clause of result)

1. So ... that (*quá ... đến nỗi, đến nỗi mà*)

so + adjective / adverb + that

Ví dụ: He was **so tired that** he had to stop working.

(*Anh ấy mệt đến nỗi phải ngừng làm việc.*)

- * Đôi khi, để nhấn mạnh, *so + adj* được đặt ở đầu câu và theo sau là hình thức đảo ngữ của động từ.

Ví dụ: **So terrible was the storm that** whole roofs were ripped off.

(*Cơn bão khủng khiếp đến nỗi tất cả các mái nhà bị cuốn bay.*)

Khi tính từ là *many, much, few, little* thì có thể có danh từ theo sau.

so + many / few + plural countable noun + that
so + much / little + uncountable noun + that

Ví dụ: She has **so few friends that** she often feels sad and lonely.
(*Cô ấy có ít bạn bè đến nỗi cô ấy thường thấy buồn và cô đơn.*)
He drank **so much wine that** he felt sick.
(*Anh ấy uống nhiều rượu đến nỗi cảm thấy buồn nôn.*)

so + adjective + a + singular countable noun + that

Ví dụ: It was **so hot a day that** we decided to stay indoors.
(*Trời nóng đến nỗi chúng tôi quyết định ở nhà không đi đâu cả.*)

2. Such ... that (*quá ... đến nỗi, đến nỗi mà*)

such (+ a / an) + adjective + noun + that

Ví dụ: It was **such an interesting novel that** I have read it three times.
(*Quyển sách hay đến nỗi tôi đã đọc ba lần.*)
It was **such good milk that** we couldn't stop drinking it.
(*Sữa ngon đến nỗi chúng tôi không thể ngừng uống.*)

7. Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ mục đích (Adverb clause of purpose)

Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ mục đích bắt đầu bằng: so that, in order that (*để, để mà*).

so that/ in order that + S + will/ would/ can/ could/... + V(bare-inf.)

Ví dụ: She got up early **so that/ in order that she would not miss** the bus.
(*Cô ấy dậy sớm để không trễ xe buýt.*)
Tom booked the tickets early **so that/ in order that he could get** the seats near the stage.
(*Tom đặt vé sớm để có được chỗ ngồi gần sân khấu.*)

Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ mục đích có thể rút gọn thành cụm từ, bắt đầu bằng *to-infinitive, in order/ so as (+ not) + to-infinitive*.

Ví dụ: I'm going to Austria **to learn** German.
(*Tôi sẽ đi Áo để học tiếng Đức.*)

She got up early **so as/ in order not to miss** the bus.
(*Cô ấy dậy sớm để không trễ xe buýt.*)

8. Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ điều kiện (Adverb clause of condition)

Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ sự điều kiện bắt đầu bằng: if, provided/ providing (that), supposed/ supposing (that) (*nếu, nếu như*), unless (*nếu không, trừ khi*).

Ví dụ: **If you do not work harder**, you will not succeed.

Unless you work harder, you will not succeed.

(*Nếu bạn không làm việc chăm chỉ hơn, bạn sẽ không thành công.*)

* Xem phần câu điều kiện (conditional sentences)

9. Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ sự so sánh (Adverb clause of comparison)

Ví dụ: Is it as good **as you expected?**
(*Nó có tốt như bạn mong đợi không?*)

It's colder today **than it was yesterday.**

(*Hôm nay trời lạnh hơn hôm qua.*)

* Xem phần so sánh tính từ và trạng từ (Comparison of adjectives and adverbs)

MULTIPLE CHOICE

Choose a, b, c, or d that best completes the sentence or that can substitute the underlined part.

1. _____ you have finished your work, you can go home.
a. No sooner b. As soon as c. While d. Before
2. The whole country was very upset _____ the president was assassinated.
a. before b. until c. when d. as long as
3. _____ I come, I will call you so that you can pick me up at the station
_____ I arrive at the station.
a. Before / when b. After / until c. As far as / before d. While / till
4. _____ my mother was cooking in the kitchen, my father was working in the garden.
a. While b. As soon as c. No sooner d. After
5. I have not seen him again _____ we graduated from the university.
a. after b. as c. when d. since
6. My grandfather passed away _____.
a. as soon as I would be born b. since I had been born
c. while I was born d. before I was born
7. We will have prepared everything _____.
a. as soon as the meeting will begin b. by the time the meeting begins
c. as long as the meeting would begin d. after the meeting began
8. _____, she often wears in red.
a. After I have met her b. Whenever I meet her
c. By the time I meet her d. Until I will meet her
9. _____ than his friend called.
a. He had no sooner arrived home b. Before he had arrived home
c. Not until he arrived home d. As soon as he arrived home
10. _____, Maria put the dishes away.
a. Since I have washed up b. Until I was washing up
c. After I had washed up d. While I had washed up
11. Put the sign _____ the students can read it.
a. as b. where c. while d. when
12. _____, there is fire.
a. Where smoke is b. Where is there smoke
c. Where there is smoke d. Where is smoke
13. _____, I hope these wishes will reach you and you have a smile when you read them.
a. When are you b. When you are c. Where are you d. Wherever you are
14. This credit card is accepted _____.
a. where do you go b. you go wherever
c. when you go wherever d. wherever you go
15. John failed _____.
a. because he did not study hard b. since he stopped to study hard
c. due to study hard d. because of he did not study hard

16. I ordered two pizzas as we were all hungry.
 a. when b. while c. because d. soon
17. The conference had to be cancelled _____ a key piece of equipment was out of work.
 a. since b. because c. as the fact d. due to the fact that
18. The expedition had to be postponed because there was a typhoon.
 a. so as to b. with a view to
 c. as long as d. on account of the fact that
19. Tony had little difficulty in passing the examination, _____ he has a very good foundation in English
 a. since b. as c. for d. because
20. _____ you are over 18, you can join the army.
 a. As long as b. Due to c. Because of d. On account of
21. Jane joined the English Club _____.
 a. because of she wanted to improve her English
 b. because she wanted to improve her English
 c. thanks to her improving English
 d. due to her improvement of English
22. Since there was no electricity during the storm, _____.
 a. so we have to use candles
 b. due to the fact that we have to use candles
 c. we have to use candles
 d. because of using candles
23. _____, so he was late for work.
 a. Paul had missed the train b. Because Paul had missed the train
 c. As Paul had missed the train d. On account of Paul's missing the train
24. _____ Tom broke the window, he did not feel guilty about it.
 a. Although b. Because c. Despite d. In spite of
25. _____, he passed with the highest marks.
 a. Even although the difficult course b. Despite the course was difficult
 c. In spite of the course was difficult d. Although the course was difficult
26. _____ the car was expensive, he bought it.
 a. Even though b. As though c. Despite d. In spite of
27. _____, Rafael smokes 2 packs a day.
 a. Despite of cigarettes are dangerous
 b. Though the fact that cigarettes are dangerous
 c. Despite the fact that cigarettes are dangerous
 d. In spite that cigarettes are dangerous
28. Although she has saved for a long time, _____.
 a. and she can afford that house
 b. so she can afford that house
 c. she is not able to afford that house
 d. but she is not able to afford that house
29. _____ China has made great efforts to ensure the survival of the panda, it is still in danger of extinction.
 a. In spite b. In spite of c. As though d. Even if

30. Some people are not convinced that there is a serious risk to their health from smoking _____ tobacco firms put a health warning on every packet of cigarettes.
 a. even though b. but c. despite that d. in spite of
31. Despite the fact that he had ill health _____.
 a. and he continued to work b. but he continued to work
 c. he continued to work d. so that he continued to work
32. The traffic was _____ heavy that we could not manage to arrive at the meeting.
 a. so b. such c. because d. though
33. There were _____ on the subject that we did not know where to begin.
 a. so many books b. so much books c. such books d. such as books
34. She was _____ she was not able to say anything.
 a. very upset that b. too upset that c. so upset that d. such upset that
35. Mr. Nelson had _____ he had to borrow me \$5 for lunch.
 a. so money that b. so little money that
 c. such little money that d. such money that
36. He was in _____ he almost pushed me over on the stairs.
 a. such a hurry that b. such hurried that
 c. so a hurry that d. a hurry such that
37. It was such a boring film that we left the movies before it ended.
 a. The film was very boring b. It was so a boring film
 c. It was a too boring film d. So boring was the film
38. She was _____ I could not help looking at her.
 a. very beautiful that b. such beautiful that
 c. so a beautiful girl that d. so beautiful that
39. Susan has _____ she spends almost all of her time alone.
 a. such a few friends that b. so friends that
 c. so few friends that d. such friends that
40. _____ everyone in my office likes him.
 a. So a helpful employer he is b. He is such a helpful employer that
 c. He is so a helpful employer that d. Such a helpful employer he is
41. He drank _____ he had to suffer from cancer.
 a. so much that b. so many that c. such much that d. such many that
42. You should keep the milk in the refrigerator _____ it does not go bad.
 a. as b. so c. so as to d. so that
43. I fixed it _____ everybody could use it.
 a. in order that b. in order to c. so as to d. to
44. The teacher explained the lessons slowly _____.
 a. to understand them clearly
 b. so that his students could understand them clearly
 c. in order to understand them clearly
 d. so as his students understand them clearly
45. John got to work early _____ he could finish the report before the meeting.
 a. in order to b. in order that c. so as to d. such that

46. We should conserve the natural resources _____.
- so that we can use them for a long time
 - in order to use them for a long time
 - to use them for a long time
 - all are correct
47. Regular checks are required in order that _____.
- safety standards are maintained
 - so safety standards are maintained
 - to maintain safety standards
 - maintain safety standards
48. She worked overtime _____.
- in order that preparing everything on time
 - in order that being prepared on time
 - so that everything would be prepared on time
 - so as to being prepared on time
49. I do not want to hear any more complaints. I have got enough problems, _____ it is.
- as
 - so as
 - as if
 - as though
50. I will behave toward them _____ I would like to be treated.
- as
 - as though
 - as if
 - so as to
51. They all stared at me _____ I had just dropped from Mars.
- as
 - as though
 - so as to
 - as to
52. She talked _____ the boss of our office.
- if only she became
 - even if she had become
 - as though she had become
 - as if she will become
53. They were going away without saying anything _____ nothing had happened.
- if
 - even if
 - as if
 - if only
54. She looked at me as though she _____ me for a long time.
- will not have seen
 - will not see
 - has not seen
 - had not seen
55. My friend is a veterinarian. She treats animals almost _____.
- as human
 - as if they were human
 - as though they are human
 - as they are human
56. He walked past me _____.
- as though I will not exist
 - as I did not exist
 - as if I did not exist
 - even though I did not exist
57. I invested the money in that company _____ you suggested.
- as
 - as if
 - as though
 - so as
58. The house was in such a mess. It looked _____.
- as a bomb had dropped on it
 - as if a bomb has dropped on it
 - as if a bomb is dropping on it
 - as though a bomb had dropped on it
59. She is a student but she is acting _____.
- as though a professional actress
 - as if she were a professional actress
 - as though she is a professional actress
 - as if she is a professional actress
60. Leave everything just _____ you found it:
- as
 - as though
 - as if
 - though

MODULE 18

NOUN CLAUSES (*Mệnh đề danh từ*)

Mệnh đề danh từ (noun clause) là mệnh đề phụ có chức năng như một danh từ. Mệnh đề danh từ thường được bắt đầu bằng *that, whether, if* hoặc các nghi vấn từ (*who, whose, what, when, where, why, how*).

Mệnh đề danh từ có thể làm:

1. Chủ ngữ của câu (subject of a sentence)

Ví dụ: **That he was sacked** does not surprise us.

(Việc anh ấy bị đuổi không làm chúng tôi ngạc nhiên.)

Why he left is not our concern.

(Lý do anh ấy bỏ đi không phải là mối bận tâm của chúng tôi.)

2. Tân ngữ của động từ hoặc giới từ (object of a verb or a preposition)

Ví dụ: I do not know **who he is**. (Tôi không biết anh ta là ai cả.)

Pay careful attention to **what I am going to say**.

(Hãy chú ý những điều tôi sắp nói.)

3. Bổ ngữ của câu (complement of a sentence)

Ví dụ: The question is **how we can get enough money**.

(Vấn đề là chúng ta làm cách nào để có đủ tiền.)

What surprised me was **that he spoke English so well**.

(Điều làm tôi ngạc nhiên là anh ta nói tiếng Anh rất hay.)

4. Mệnh đề đồng cách của danh từ (appositive of a noun)

Ví dụ: A report **that the area was dangerous** was ignored by the resident. (Cư dân đã phớt lờ bản báo cáo rằng khu vực này nguy hiểm.)

* **Lưu ý:** Không dùng trật tự từ của câu nghi vấn trong mệnh đề danh từ.

Ví dụ: I couldn't hear **what he said**. (NOT I couldn't hear ~~what did he say~~.)

I wonder **who he is**. (NOT I wonder ~~who is he~~.)

MULTIPLE CHOICE

Choose a, b, c, or d that best completes the sentence.

1. _____ shocked his friends.
a. What did Billy b. What Billy did c. Billy did d. Bill did what
2. Mary's friends do not know _____.
a. even if she cannot swim b. as if that she cannot swim
c. that she cannot swim d. if that she cannot swim
3. John's mistake was _____.
a. be late for work three times b. late for work three times
c. had been late for work three times d. that he had been late for work three times
4. We are not responsible for _____.
a. what you have done b. that you have done
c. what have you done d. whether have you done

5. Everybody was sad _____.
- the fact that the president was in poor health
 - why the president was in poor health
 - that the president was in poor health
 - that was the president in poor health
6. You must decide on _____.
- to take which English course
 - which English course you should take
 - that which English course to take
 - which English course should you take
7. The mother called the police and said _____.
- which was her son kidnapped
 - which her son was kidnapped
 - that her son was kidnapped
 - that was her son kidnapped
8. I would like to know _____.
- to live
 - where you live
 - how you to live
 - where do you live
9. The concert advertisement did not say _____.
- when will the concert begin
 - when the concert will begin
 - when would the concert begin
 - when the concert would begin
10. _____ is still unknown.
- Mary was sacked
 - Was Mary sacked
 - Why Mary was sacked
 - Why was Mary sacked
11. I wonder _____.
- Peter will come
 - if Peter will come
 - that Peter will come
 - if will Peter come
12. Can you tell me _____?
- how much this shirt costs
 - how much does this shirt cost
 - this shirt costs how much
 - how much is this shirt
13. Could you explain _____?
- a noun clause is recognized
 - what a noun clause is recognized
 - how a noun clause is recognized
 - how is a noun clause recognized
14. I wonder _____ from the earth.
- how far the moon is
 - how far is the moon
 - if how far the moon is
 - how is the moon far
15. _____ will always important to me.
- Whatever you do
 - Whatever do you do
 - What do you do
 - You do
16. The truth _____.
- is that is he unreliable
 - that is he unreliable
 - that he is unreliable
 - is that he is unreliable
17. _____, I could see a lot of farms and fields.
- Where did I stand
 - From did where I stand
 - Where I stood
 - From where I stood
18. _____ was surely fined by the police.
- Whoever had this done
 - Whoever had done this
 - Had this done by whoever
 - This had done by whoever

31. It is unclear _____.
- whether he shot himself or was murdered
 - that he shot himself or was murdered
 - if did he shoot himself or was murdered
 - whether was he shot himself or murdered
32. _____ is _____.
- What bothers me / that my friend is so talkative
 - What do I bother / my friend is so talkative
 - How bothers me / that my friend is so talkative
 - How do I bother / my friend is so talkative
33. I was not sure _____.
- which would you like
 - whether you would like it
 - you would like it
 - whether would you like it
34. Can you guess _____?
- what is his occupation
 - that his occupation is
 - what his occupation is
 - that is his occupation
35. _____ is your own business.
- Do you do
 - What will do after school
 - What do you do after school
 - What you do after school
36. _____ did not surprise us.
- Peter failed his exam
 - that Peter failed his exam
 - Peter failed his exam that
 - Peter failed his exam, that
37. Mrs. Kramer rang half an hour ago to ask _____.
- her cake was ready
 - if her cake was ready
 - was her cake ready
 - that was her cake ready
38. _____ depends mostly on her test scores.
- Whether she goes to college
 - If does she go to college
 - Whether does she go to college
 - That if she goes to college
39. A good coach never reveals to other teams _____.
- what his team's weaknesses are
 - that his team's weaknesses are
 - his team's weaknesses are
 - that are his team's weaknesses
40. _____ is a mystery.
- Why isn't he here today
 - Why he isn't here today
 - Why isn't he here today?
 - Why he isn't here today?
41. Your wage depends on _____.
- how do you work
 - how you work
 - you work
 - do you work
42. _____ is not as important as _____.
- How many you have read books / do you understand what you have read
 - How many have books you read / whether you understand have what you read
 - Books you have read / you understand what you have read
 - How many books you have read / whether you understand what you have read
43. I asked myself _____.
- whether is margarine healthier than butter
 - is that margarine healthier than butter

- VERB + **ance / ence**
attend → attendance (*sự tham dự*) depend → dependence (*sự phụ thuộc*)
- VERB + **or / er / ar / ant / ee** (chỉ người)
learn → learner (*học viên*) educate → educator (*nhà giáo dục*)
beg → beggar (*người ăn xin*) employ → employee (*nhân viên*)
- VERB + **ing / y**
paint → painting (*bức tranh*) discover → discovery (*điều khám phá*)
- VERB + **ure / age**
expose → exposure (*sự tiếp xúc*) drain → drainage (*sự tháo nước*)
- NOUN + **ship / hood**
friend → friendship (*tình bạn*) brother → brotherhood (*tình anh em*)
- NOUN + **ism** (nói về chủ nghĩa hoặc học thuyết)
capital → capitalism (*chủ nghĩa tư bản*)
- ADJECTIVE + **ce / ity**
important → importance (*tầm quan trọng*)
mature → maturity (*sự trưởng thành*)
- ADJECTIVE + **ness / dom**
sick → sickness (*căn bệnh*) free → freedom (*sự tự do*)
- ADJECTIVE + **ism**
social → socialism (*chủ nghĩa xã hội*)
formal → formalism (*chủ nghĩa hình thức*)

b. Một số danh từ được thành lập bằng cách thêm tiền tố (prefixes) vào trước một danh từ.

- **super / under** + NOUN
market → supermarket (*siêu thị*) current → undercurrent (*dòng nước ngầm*)
- **sur / sub** + NOUN
face → surface (*bề mặt*) standard → substandard (*dưới tiêu chuẩn*)

2. Thành lập động từ (verb formations)

a. Động từ thường được thành lập bằng cách thêm hậu tố (suffixes) hoặc tiền tố (prefixes) vào danh từ, tính từ hoặc động từ khác.

- NOUN + **fy**
beauty → beautify (*làm đẹp*) identity → identify (*nhận dạng*)
- NOUN/ ADJECTIVE + **ize / ise**
social → socialize (*xã hội hóa*) symbol → symbolize (*tượng trưng cho*)
- ADJECTIVE + **en**
tight → tighten (*thắt chặt*) weak → weaken (*làm suy yếu*)
- **en** + NOUN / ADJECTIVE
danger → endanger (*gây nguy hại*) rich → enrich (*làm giàu*)
- **over/ under/ super** + VERB
act → overact (*diễn cường điệu*) estimate → underestimate (*đánh giá thấp*)

b. Một số ngoại động từ (transitive verbs) được thành lập bằng cách thêm tiền tố **out-** vào nội động từ (intransitive verbs).

- go → outgo (*trội hơn*) weigh → outweigh (*nặng hơn*)

- * Ngoại động từ (transitive verbs) là động từ luôn có tân ngữ trực tiếp (direct object) theo sau.
 - * Nội động từ (intransitive verbs) là động từ không cần có tân ngữ (object).
3. Thành lập tính từ (adjective formations)
- a. Một số tính từ được thành lập bằng cách thêm hậu tố (suffixes) vào sau danh từ hoặc động từ.
- NOUN + **ful / less**
harm → harmful / harmless (*có hại / vô hại*)
use → useful / useless (*có ích / vô ích*)
 - NOUN + **y / ly**
rain → rainy (*có mưa*) year → yearly (*hàng năm*)
 - NOUN + **al**
culture → cultural (*thuộc văn hóa*) music → musical (*thuộc âm nhạc*)
 - NOUN + **ous / able**
adventure → adventurous (*mạo hiểm*) comfort → comfortable (*thoải mái*)
 - NOUN + **ish / like**
self → selfish (*ích kỷ*) child → childlike (*như trẻ con*)
 - VERB + **ive**
act → active (*tích cực*) attract → attractive (*hấp dẫn, lôi cuốn*)
 - VERB + **able / ible**
accept → acceptable (*có thể chấp nhận*) reduce → reducible (*có thể giảm*)
 - VERB + **ing / ed**
interest → interesting / interested (*thú vị*)
- b. Một số tính từ mang nghĩa phủ định được thành lập bằng cách thêm tiền tố phủ định (*un-, in-, im-, ir-, il-, dis-*) vào trước tính từ.
- happy → unhappy (*không hạnh phúc*) formal → informal (*thân mật*)
 - patient → impatient (*thiếu kiên nhẫn*) regular → irregular (*bất thường*)
 - legal → illegal (*bất hợp pháp*)
 - honest → dishonest (*không thành thật*)
4. Thành lập trạng từ (adverb formations)
- Trạng từ thường được thành lập bằng cách thêm hậu tố **-ly** vào sau tính từ.

ADJECTIVE + **ly** → ADVERB

quiet → quietly (*một cách yên tĩnh*) lucky → luckily (*một cách may mắn*)
careful → carefully (*một cách cẩn thận*)

- * Ngoại lệ: good → well (*tốt, giỏi*) hard → hard (*khó khăn, chăm chỉ*)
fast → fast (*nhanh*) late → late/ lately (*trễ/ mới đây*)

II. WORD ORDER (Trật tự từ)

1. Danh từ (nouns): Danh từ thường đứng ở các vị trí

- Chủ ngữ (subject) hoặc tân ngữ (object) của câu.

Ví dụ: **Pollution** is harmful to our health.

(*Sự ô nhiễm có hại cho sức khỏe của chúng ta.*)

I bought the **painting** yesterday.

(*Tôi mua bức tranh này hôm qua.*)

- Sau các tính từ hoặc tính từ sở hữu (*his, my, her,...*).
Ví dụ: His **mother** is a good **teacher**. (*Mẹ anh ấy là giáo viên giỏi.*)
- Sau *enough* và các từ chỉ số lượng (*much, many, some, any, most, few,...*).
Ví dụ: We don't have enough **money** to buy that house.
(*Chúng tôi không có đủ tiền mua ngôi nhà đó.*)
Didn't you borrow some **books** of mine?
(*Có phải bạn đã mượn vài cuốn sách của tôi?*)
- Sau các mạo từ (*a, an, the*), từ hạn định (*this, that, each, every, both,...*) và các giới từ (*in, on, of, with,...*). Lưu ý cấu trúc **a/ an/ the/... + Adj + N**.
Ví dụ: The **dolphin** is an intelligent **animal**.
(*Cá heo là loài vật thông minh.*)
She was lying in **bed**. (*Cô ấy đang nằm trên giường.*)

2. Tính từ (adjectives): Tính từ thường đứng ở các vị trí

- Trước danh từ.
Ví dụ: She has very **modern** ideas about educating her children.
(*Bà ấy có quan điểm dạy con rất hiện đại.*)

• **Trật tự của tính từ đứng trước danh từ**

Khi có nhiều tính từ trước danh từ, các tính từ được viết theo trật tự sau:

opinion	size	age	shape	color	origin	material	type	purpose + N
ý kiến	kích thước	tuổi	hình dáng	màu sắc	xuất xứ	chất liệu	loại	mục đích

Ví dụ: a **fat old white** horse (*một con ngựa trắng già, mập mạp*)
a **beautiful small round black leather** handbag (*một cái túi xách tay bằng da, tròn, nhỏ, màu đen rất xinh xắn*)
an **enormous brown German glass beer** mug. (*một cái cốc uống bia của Đức, to, màu nâu và làm bằng thủy tinh*)

- Sau các hệ từ (linking verbs) *be, get, seem, appear, feel, taste, look, smell, become* và sau *keep/ make + object*.

Ví dụ: You look **happy** now. (*Lúc này trông các bạn thật hạnh phúc.*)
The news made her **happy**. (*Tin đó làm cô ấy vui.*)

- Sau *too*, trước *enough* và trong cấu trúc *so ... that*.

Ví dụ: He's **too short** to play basketball.
(*Anh ấy quá thấp không thể chơi bóng rổ được.*)
He isn't tall **enough** to play basketball.
(*Anh ấy không đủ cao để chơi bóng rổ.*)
She was so **angry** that she couldn't speak.
(*Bà ấy giận đến mức không nói được.*)

- Trong câu so sánh và câu cảm thán với *How* và *What*.

Ví dụ: He is as **deaf** as a post. (*Ông ta điếc đặc.*)
How beautiful the girl is! (*Cô gái đó xinh quá!*)

3. Trạng từ (adverbs): Trạng từ thường đứng ở các vị trí

- Sau trợ động từ, động từ *to be* và trước động từ thường.

Ví dụ: I have **recently** meet him at the supermarket.
(*Tôi vừa gặp anh ấy ở siêu thị.*)
He **often** goes to bed late. (*Anh ấy thường đi ngủ trễ.*)

- Trước tính từ.

Ví dụ: An **extremely** pretty woman entered the room.

(Một người phụ nữ cực kỳ duyên dáng bước vào phòng.)

- Sau *too*, trước *enough* và trong cấu trúc *so ... that*.

Ví dụ: She came **too late** to see him yesterday. (Hôm qua cô ấy đến quá trễ nên không gặp được anh ta.)

- Cuối câu hoặc đôi khi đứng một mình ở đầu câu và cách câu bằng dấu phẩy.

Ví dụ: We'll let you know our decision **next week**.

(Chúng tôi sẽ cho các bạn biết quyết định của chúng tôi tuần sau.)

Fortunately, there were enough seats left for the concert.

(Rất may là buổi hòa nhạc vẫn còn đủ chỗ.)

• Vị trí của các loại trạng từ

a. Trạng từ chỉ thời gian (Adverbs of time) thường được đặt ở đầu câu hoặc cuối câu.

Ví dụ: Can you do it **now**? (Anh có thể làm điều đó ngay bây giờ không?)

b. Trạng từ chỉ nơi chốn (Adverbs of place) đứng sau động từ, tân ngữ và trước trạng từ chỉ thời gian nếu trạng từ chỉ thời gian đặt ở cuối câu.

Ví dụ: John is standing **there**. (John đang đứng ở đằng kia.)

I will take you **home** this evening. (Tôi sẽ đưa bạn về nhà tối nay.)

c. Trạng từ chỉ thể cách (Adverbs of manner) thường được đặt sau trạng từ chỉ mức độ, động từ, tân ngữ, cuối câu hoặc trước tính từ.

Ví dụ: Jack drives very **carefully**. (John lái xe rất cẩn thận.)

d. Trạng từ năng diễn (Adverbs of frequency) thường đứng sau động từ TO BE, trợ động từ và trước động từ thường.

Ví dụ: I am **usually** busy on Monday. (Tôi thường bận rộn vào thứ Hai.)

* Trạng từ năng diễn có thể đặt ở đầu câu trong trường hợp nhấn mạnh (Xem phần Inversion.)

e. Trạng từ chỉ mức độ (Adverbs of degree) thường được đặt ở sau động từ hoặc ở cuối câu.

Ví dụ: They like playing golf **a lot**. (Họ rất thích chơi golf.)

f. Trạng từ chỉ ý kiến (Adverbs of comment) thường được đặt ở đầu câu.

Ví dụ: **Luckily**, I was able to come to the presentation.

(May là tôi đã có thể đến xem buổi diễn.)

4. Động từ (verbs): Động từ thường đứng sau chủ ngữ.

Ví dụ: I **believe** her because she always **tells** the truth. (Tôi tin cô ấy vì cô ấy luôn nói thật.)

MULTIPLE CHOICE

Choose a, b, c, or d that best completes the sentence.

- The fire-prevention system is _____ by any small increase in temperature.
a. active b. activated c. acted d. acting
- She was completely _____ because she was wearing a mask and sunglasses.
a. recognize b. recognition c. recognizable d. unrecognizable

3. A laser beam consists of a _____ of pure light.
a. concentrate b. concentration c. concentrative d. concentrating
4. Laser beams have been used for cancer _____.
a. treat b. treatable c. untreatable d. treatment
5. To _____ in a job interview, you should arrive on time, be well-dressed, and keep _____ when answering the questions.
a. successfully /calm b. successful /calmness
c. success /calmly d. succeed /calm
6. Air pollution happens when wastes are poured into the atmosphere and the air becomes _____ and unpleasant to breathe.
a. contaminate b. contamination c. contaminated d. contaminative
7. The practice of _____ is also known as farming.
a. agriculture b. agricultural c. agriculturally d. agriculturalist
8. A (an) _____ home environment can affect a child's _____.
a. happiness / behavioral b. happy / behave
c. unhappiness / behave d. unhappy / behavior
9. Isaac Newton laid the _____ for many other discoveries in mathematics and physics.
a. found b. founded c. founder d. foundation
10. The geneticists have discovered the laws of _____.
a. inherit b. inheritance c. inheritor d. inheritable
11. The most serious cause of pollution is the _____ of industry.
a. develop b. development c. developmental d. developed
12. We earn our _____ by raising cattle and chicken.
a. live b. life c. living d. lives
13. Marilyn Monroe was very _____ in 1960s.
a. famous b. famously c. fame d. famousness
14. That car is _____.
a. surprisingly expensive b. surprised expensively
c. surprise expense d. surprising expensiveness
15. Smoking has _____ effects on our health.
a. harm b. harmful c. harmfully d. harmlessly
16. Something went _____ with my computer so I could not complete my work.
a. wrong b. wrongly c. wrongness d. wrongfulness
17. He looked at the picture _____ without saying a word.
a. attentive b. attention c. attentively d. attentiveness
18. Vitamin D helps us not only build _____ teeth and bones but also absorb calcium.
a. strong b. strength c. strongly d. strengthen
19. Every day, people dispose _____ waste from both domestic and _____ sources without paying any attention to the bad results.
a. wanting / commerce b. unwanted / commercialize
c. wanted / commercially d. unwanted / commercial
20. My mother has just bought an _____ washing machine.
a. automation b. automate c. automatic d. automatically

38. I do not know which picture books are suitable for my little son. Have you got any _____?
- a. recommend b. recommender c. recommendation d. recommendable
39. _____ and cultural places in our country should be given appropriate care.
- a. History b. Historian c. Historical d. Historically
40. It is important to protect landscapes from the harmful effects of _____ pollution.
- a. environment b. environmentalist
c. environmentalism d. environmental
41. China is a huge country, containing a _____ of culture and _____ of landscape.
- a. rich / diverse b. richly / diversely
c. richness / diversity d. riches / diversity
42. Do not use time and money _____.
- a. care b. careful c. careless d. carelessly
43. To be _____, I think you have made a wrong _____.
- a. honest / decision b. honesty / decide
c. honestly / decisive d. dishonestly / decider
44. _____ of wildlife is happening frequently all over the world.
- a. Destroy b. Destruction c. Destructive d. Destructively
45. Thanks to _____ environmentalists and conservationists, many kinds of plants and animals are protected.
- a. enthusiast b. enthusiasm c. enthusiastic d. enthusiastically
46. Humans have caused a lot of _____ to the environment, and now they have to suffer from _____ pollution.
- a. damageable / seriousness b. damaging / serious
c. damage / serious d. damage / seriously
47. People are more aware of the _____ of music in treating mental _____.
- a. important / illness b. importantly / illness
c. important / ill d. importance / illness
48. Conservation is a more and more of a _____.
- a. necessity b. necessary c. necessarily d. necessitate
49. Most of the wastes from factories are _____. They are _____ our environment.
- a. poisonous / poisoning b. poison / poisoned
c. poisonously / poisoned d. poisons / poisoner
50. Rap music is becoming more and more _____ among teenagers.
- a. popularize b. popular c. popularity d. popularly
51. Mary is _____.
- a. a young beautiful girl b. a beautiful young girl
c. beautiful a young girl d. beautiful young a girl
52. Look at the man who is wearing _____.
- a. a tie dirty old cotton b. a cotton dirty old tie
c. an old cotton dirty tie d. a dirty old cotton tie
53. Peter has just come back from Japan. He gave me _____.
- a. a small Japanese serving bowl b. a Japanese small serving bowl
c. a serving small Japanese bowl d. a Japanese serving small bowl

54. Mary has just bought _____.
- a. a big red hat b. a red big hat c. big red a hat d. a hat big red
55. The concert was performed by _____.
- a. an exciting new band French b. a new French exciting band
c. an exciting new French band d. a French exciting new band
56. There was _____ in the middle of the room.
- a. a square wooden old table b. an old table square wooden
c. an old square wooden table d. a wooden old square table
57. The sculptor needs _____.
- a. a carving steel new knife b. a carving new steel knife
c. a steel carving new knife d. a new steel carving knife
58. On the way to Toronto, I met _____, who became one of my best friends later.
- a. a thin small Canadian lady b. a Canadian small thin lady
c. a small thin Canadian lady d. a small Canadian thin lady
59. _____ our neighbors bought a new car.
- a. Late last year b. Last year late c. Last late year d. Year last late
60. Portia White was _____.
- a. a famous opera singer b. a famous singer opera
c. an opera famous singer d. a singer famous opera
61. David Garrick was _____.
- a. a very eighteenth-century prominent actor
b. a very prominent eighteenth-century actor
c. an eighteenth-century very prominent actor
d. an actor very prominent eighteenth-century
62. Sarah Siddons was _____ in the 1780s.
- a. of her career as an actress at the height
b. of her career at the height as an actress
c. at the height of her career as an actress
d. as an actress at the height of her career
63. He tripped over _____.
- a. in the hallway a box left carelessly b. a box in the hallway left carelessly
c. carelessly a box left in the hallway d. a box left carelessly in the hallway
64. The road crew was startled by _____.
- a. the sight of three large deer crossing the road
b. crossing the road the sight of three large deer
c. three large deer of the sight crossing the road
d. three large deer crossing the road of the sight
65. They received _____ because they had studied hard.
- a. on their exam high marks b. high marks on their exam
c. their marks on high exam d. their exam on high marks
66. He _____ changes and new ideas.
- a. is often unwilling to accept b. is unwilling to accept often
c. often is unwilling to accept d. is often accept to unwilling

67. I often play football _____.
- a. on the garden in Sundays b. in Sundays on the garden
c. in the garden on Sundays d. on Sundays in the garden
68. We will not spend _____.
- a. at home next year our holiday b. at home our holiday next year
c. our holiday at home next year d. our holiday next year at home
69. _____ for us?
- a. How has she been waiting long b. Has she been waiting how long
c. How long has she been waiting d. How long she has been waiting
70. I do not understand why some local people insist on having _____.
- a. six different kinds of cupboards in their mustard
b. six different kinds of mustard in their cupboards
c. mustard of their cupboards in six different kinds
d. in their mustard cupboards of six different kinds
71. The vacation my grandparents won includes _____.
- a. trips to twelve European cities b. European cities to twelve trips
c. to twelve European cities trips d. European trips to twelve cities
72. According to the sign, the nearest town is _____.
- a. 60 away miles b. away 60 miles c. 60 miles away d. 60-miles away
73. _____ were invaded by beetles this summer.
- a. The neighborhood in all the gardens
b. In the gardens all the neighborhood
c. All the gardens in the neighborhood
d. The gardens in all the neighborhood
74. We painted _____.
- a. table the red and chairs the blue b. blue the chairs and red the table
c. red the table and blue the chairs d. the table red and the chairs blue
75. _____, Martha Ballard can communicate in English fluently.
- a. Over the course of two years b. Over of two years the course
c. Of two years over the course d. Of over two years the course
76. She moved _____.
- a. quite slowly down the aisle b. down the aisle slowly quite
c. slowly quite down the aisle d. the aisle quite slowly down
77. She has lived _____.
- a. her life on all the island b. the island on all her life
c. on the island all her life d. on her life all the island
78. She goes to work _____.
- a. on the mainland every day by boat b. by boat on the mainland every day
c. on the mainland by boat every day d. every day by boat on the mainland
79. I _____ to my brother without a good reason.
- a. have written rarely b. written have rarely
c. have rarely written d. rarely have written
80. Beth swims _____.
- a. enthusiastically every morning to keep in shape in the pool

- b. enthusiastically in the pool every morning to keep in shape
 c. every morning to keep in shape enthusiastically in the pool
 d. to keep in shape every morning enthusiastically in the pool
81. Mr. Pike walks _____ to get a newspaper.
 a. before supper into town every afternoon patiently
 b. patiently into town every afternoon before supper
 c. into town every afternoon patiently before supper
 d. before supper every afternoon into town patiently
82. My father takes a leisure walk _____.
 a. before breakfast every day of his life b. every day before breakfast of his life
 c. breakfast before every day of his life d. of his life every day before breakfast
83. I was born _____.
 a. in a small house on the plains of northern Nebraska
 b. on the plains in a small house of northern Nebraska
 c. on the plains of northern Nebraska in a small house
 d. in northern Nebraska of a small house on the plains
84. _____ Jesse filled the coffee cup up to the brim, even above the brim.
 a. Ever so slowly, carefully, b. Carefully, slowly, ever so,
 c. Slowly, so ever carefully, d. Slowly, ever so carefully,
85. She promised to meet him _____.
 a. for next lunch Tuesday b. for lunch next Tuesday
 c. next lunch for Tuesday d. Tuesday next for lunch
86. These shoes are _____.
 a. enough not big b. big not enough c. not enough big d. not big enough
87. I have _____.
 a. special something to tell you b. to tell you special something
 c. something special to tell you d. to tell something special you
88. She does not earn _____.
 a. money enough to support her family b. enough money to support her family
 c. to support her family enough money d. to support her family money enough
89. She didn't _____.
 a. run enough fast to win b. run fast enough to win
 c. run to win fast enough d. run to win enough fast
90. Dry the car _____.
 a. with a towel soft fluffy carefully b. with a soft fluffy carefully towel
 c. with a carefully soft fluffy towel d. carefully with a soft fluffy towel
91. They walked _____.
 a. at home slowly night b. home at slowly night
 c. slowly home at night d. home slowly at night
92. We _____.
 a. have never visited London before b. have visited London never before
 c. have never before visited London d. never have visited London before
93. My book is _____.
 a. nor in my bag neither on the shelf b. neither in my bag nor on the shelf
 c. neither in the shelf nor on my bag d. in my bag nor on the shelf neither

Question word + auxiliary / be + subject...?

Ví dụ: **What** is John doing? ~ He is reading.

(*John đang làm gì vậy? ~ Anh ấy đang đọc sách.*)

Why were you absent yesterday? ~ Because I was ill.

(*Tại sao bạn vắng mặt hôm qua? ~ Vì tôi bị bệnh.*)

How often do you go shopping? ~ Once a week.

(*Bao lâu bạn đi mua sắm một lần? ~ Mỗi tuần một lần.*)

Lưu ý: Khi đặt câu hỏi cho chủ từ, trật tự từ giống câu trần thuật.

Ví dụ: **Who helped** you with your work? (*Ai giúp bạn làm việc?*)

What will happen next? (*Chuyện gì sẽ xảy ra tiếp theo?*)

3. OR-QUESTIONS (Câu hỏi lựa chọn)

Câu hỏi lựa chọn bắt đầu bằng động từ *to be* hoặc trợ động từ (*be, do, have, will, v.v*) và có liên từ **or**.

Ví dụ: **Are** you a worker **or** a driver? ~ I am a driver.

(*Bạn là công nhân hay là tài xế? ~ Tôi là tài xế.*)

Would you like coffee **or** tea? ~ I'd like coffee.

(*Bạn thích cà phê hay trà? ~ Tôi thích cà phê.*)

4. TAG QUESTIONS (Câu hỏi đuôi)

Câu hỏi đuôi được thành lập bằng một trợ động từ (hoặc động từ *be*) và một đại từ nhân xưng.

auxiliary verb (+ not) + pronoun?

- Câu trần thuật xác định → câu hỏi đuôi phủ định
- Câu trần thuật phủ định → câu hỏi đuôi xác định

Statement	Tag question
Affirmative (<i>Khẳng định</i>)	Negative (<i>Phủ định</i>)
Negative (<i>Phủ định</i>)	Affirmative (<i>Khẳng định</i>)

Ví dụ: John is at work, **isn't he?** (*John đang làm việc phải không?*)

You did not go to school yesterday, **did you?**

(*Hôm qua bạn không có đi học phải không?*)

*** Một số trường hợp ngoại lệ:**

Open the door, **will you?** (*Mở giúp cửa được không?*)

I am right, **aren't I?** (*Tôi đúng phải không?*)

Let's go out, **shall we?** (*Chúng ta đi chơi được không?*)

MULTIPLE CHOICE

Choose a, b, c, or d that best completes the sentence.

1. What _____?

a. does your company produce

b. your company produces

c. does your company produces

d. do your company produce

2. _____? – It is sunny.
 a. How is the weather like b. What does the weather like
 c. What is the weather like d. How does the weather like
3. _____ can we meet? – At three o'clock tomorrow.
 a. Why b. When c. What d. Whom
4. _____ glass is yours? – The empty one.
 a. How b. Which c. Whom d. Whose
5. _____? – It's my father's.
 a. Who is the car b. What is the car c. Whose car is it d. Which is the car
6. If you were me, _____?
 a. what would you do b. what you would do
 c. what do you would d. what would do you
7. _____? – I will have coffee.
 a. Will you have coffee b. What are you doing
 c. Would you like tea or coffee d. Would you like coffee
8. _____? – In a pool.
 a. Can you swim b. Where do you often go swimming
 c. Is Peter swimming d. How often do you go swimming
9. Did John go to work or to school?
 a. No, he didn't b. Not yet c. To work d. Yes, he did
10. When does your class finish? – _____.
 a. By Mr. Pike, our form teacher b. Not very often
 c. In the hall d. At 11 o'clock
11. Where is your pencil? – _____.
 a. With my right hand b. In my handbag
 c. Because it has lost d. Although it is expensive
12. Has Peter clean the floor yet? - _____.
 a. Not yet b. No, he doesn't c. Yes, he does d. Yes, he is
13. Would you like to drink something? - _____.
 a. No, thanks b. I drank tea
 c. I like coffee better than tea d. I am full
14. _____ the advertisement in?
 a. Which paper you have seen b. Which did paper you see
 c. Which paper did you see d. Which paper you saw
15. How _____ do they go shopping? – Twice a week.
 a. much b. long c. often d. far
16. _____ with his work yesterday? – John did.
 a. Who did Peter help b. Who helped Peter
 c. Whom did Peter help d. Who did helped Peter
17. _____ before cars and trains were invented?
 a. Which was means of transport used b. Which means of transport was used
 c. Which did means of transport used d. Which did means of transport use
18. _____? – It is the system of paying for goods or services with other goods or services instead of using money.
 a. How is barter b. Which barter is c. What barter is d. What is barter

36. _____ you interested in the book I lent you?
 a. Do b. Have c. Are d. Did
37. _____ call me soon?
 a. Why haven't you b. Why you don't c. Why aren't you d. Why didn't you
38. _____ it your responsibility to solve the problem? – Of course not.
 a. Has b. Was c. Does d. Will
39. _____ a new computer?
 a. Ought we to buy b. Do we ought to buy
 c. Will we ought to buy d. Have we ought to buy
40. Don't make the mistake again, _____?
 a. do you b. mustn't you c. won't you d. will you
41. Peter's a new car, _____?
 a. is he b. isn't he c. hasn't he d. does he
42. Economics is not taught at high school, _____?
 a. isn't it b. is it c. are they d. does it
43. The film was not really good, _____?
 a. does it b. does not it c. was it d. was not it
44. You used to live in New York, _____?
 a. were not you b. did you c. don't you d. didn't you
45. Pollution causes many diseases, _____?
 a. does it b. doesn't it c. do they d. don't they
46. Give me a hand, _____?
 a. will you b. do you c. don't you d. don't I
47. Let's do something to help Peter, _____?
 a. will we b. do you c. shall we d. have we
48. I think Peter won't come with us, _____?
 a. do I b. does he c. will I d. will he
49. I am responsible for the preparation, _____.
 a. am not I b. aren't I c. am I d. do I
50. We have not got enough food for the dinner, _____?
 a. do we b. don't we c. have we d. will we

MODULE 21

PHRASES (Cụm từ)

Cụm từ là một nhóm từ hay đoạn câu mà những từ trong đó có liên hệ với nhau.

1. **Cụm động từ nguyên mẫu (infinitive phrase):** bắt đầu bằng một động từ nguyên mẫu. Cụm động từ nguyên mẫu được dùng như:
 - Danh từ (noun)

Ví dụ: **To save money now** seems impossible.

It seems impossible **to save money now**. (Có vẻ như bây giờ chưa thể để dành tiền được.) [làm chủ từ cho *seems*]

- Tính từ (adjective)

Ví dụ: He always has a lot of money **to spend on his foreign trips.**
(Anh ta luôn có nhiều tiền để chi cho các chuyến đi nước ngoài.)
[bổ nghĩa cho danh từ *money*]

- Trạng từ (adverb)

Ví dụ: She went home **to get her books.** (Cô ấy về nhà để lấy sách.)
[bổ nghĩa cho động từ *went*]

2. **Cụm danh động từ (gerund phrase):** bắt đầu bằng một danh động từ (V-ing). Cụm danh động từ được dùng như một danh từ, làm chủ ngữ của câu, tân ngữ cho động từ và giới từ, bổ ngữ cho chủ ngữ và tân ngữ, hoặc làm động cách từ cho danh từ. (Xem phần Infinitives & Gerunds)

Ví dụ: **Smoking cigarettes** is bad for health.

(Hút thuốc có hại cho sức khỏe.)

He's finished **mending the car.** (Anh ấy đã sửa xe xong.)

3. **Cụm giới từ (prepositional phrase):** bắt đầu bằng giới từ và sau đó là một danh từ hay đại từ (làm tân ngữ cho giới từ đó). Cụm giới từ được dùng như:

- Tính từ (bổ nghĩa cho danh từ)

Ví dụ: The woman **in red dress** is my aunt.

(Người phụ nữ mặc đầm đỏ là dì tôi.)

- Trạng từ (bổ nghĩa cho động từ và tính từ)

Ví dụ: John is standing **by the gate.** (John đang đứng ở cổng.)

They were very curious **about the people who lived upstairs.**

(Họ rất tò mò về những người sống ở tầng trên.)

4. **Cụm phân từ (participle phrase):** bắt đầu bằng hiện tại phân từ (present participle) hoặc quá khứ phân từ (past participle).

- a. Cụm hiện tại phân từ (present participle phrase) được dùng để rút gọn khi:

- Hai hành động có cùng chủ ngữ xảy ra đồng thời hoặc liên tiếp nhau và ở dạng chủ động (active).

Ví dụ: The boy was running down the hill. He was chasing the cat.

→ The boy was running down the hill, **chasing the cat.**

(Cậu bé chạy xuống đồi, đuổi theo con mèo.)

Mary saw an accident. She called the police immediately.

→ **Seeing an accident,** Mary called the police immediately.

(Thấy tai nạn, Mary lập tức gọi cảnh sát.)

- Hành động có tính thường xuyên, lâu dài.

Ví dụ: The woman who lives next door is nice.

→ The woman **living next door** is nice.

(Người phụ nữ sống ở nhà kế bên rất tử tế.)

* **Lưu ý:**

When we turned the corner, the view was quite different.

→ Turning the corner, we had a different view.

(Rẽ ở ngã ba, chúng tôi thấy quang cảnh hoàn toàn khác.)

[NOT Turning the corner, the view was quite different.]

9. I was born and brought up in the highlands. I am used to cold weather.
- As being born and brought up in the highlands,
 - To be born and bring up in the highlands
 - Being born and bringing up in the highlands
 - Born and brought up the highlands,
10. _____ John decided to quit his job.
- On discouraging by long hours' working and low pay
 - Discouraging by long hours' working and low pay
 - To be discouraged by long hours' working and low pay
 - Discouraged by long hours' working and low pay
11. _____, he has become very skillful in the trade.
- Being train for two years
 - Been trained for two years
 - After having trained for two years
 - After having been trained for two years
12. The cat _____ leaped onto the window sill and meowed.
- with its burning eyes
 - burning eyes
 - to burn its eyes
 - eyes burnt
13. Daisy's goal in life, _____, is within her grasp this year.
- became a doctor
 - become a doctor
 - to become a doctor
 - when becoming a doctor
14. The hills _____ were long.
- to across the valley
 - that crossing the valley
 - across the valley
 - it is across the valley
15. _____ he gave up.
- Realized that there was no hope to save his business,
 - Realizing that there was no hope to save his business,
 - No hope to save his business,
 - To be hopeful to save his business,
16. As she saw such a terrible scene, she fainted.
- Seeing such a terrible scene
 - Seen such a terrible scene
 - To see such a terrible scene
 - As such a terrible scene
17. _____, she tried to console me.
- When surprising at my reaction
 - Surprised at my reaction
 - Being her surprise at my reaction
 - With her surprising at my reaction
18. I was amazed when I learnt that John had failed again.
- On amazed,
 - Amazing
 - To my amazement
 - For my amazing
19. Many families break up _____.
- because a lack of money
 - because of they lack money
 - because of a lack of money
 - since a lack of money
20. A lot of people are unhealthy as they have bad diets.
- due to their bad diets
 - because their bad diets
 - of their bad diets
 - for their bad diets
21. _____ the tardiness of my response, I was not allowed to enter the institution.
- Because
 - Because of
 - Since
 - As

22. _____, human life has become better and better.
 a. The progress' science and technology
 b. Thanks to the progress of science and technology
 c. As for the progress of science and technology
 d. Because the progress of science and technology
23. Many shops are doing badly since there is an economy depression.
 a. as an economy depression
 b. in spite of an economy depression
 c. thanks for being an economy depression
 d. because of an economy depression
24. Although they were tired, they stayed until they found out exactly what had happened.
 a. Despite they were tired b. Even if tiredness
 c. In spite of being tired d. As they were tired
25. Bad as her health was, her continued working.
 a. as though her health was bad b. despite of her bad health
 c. despite her health was bad d. in spite of her bad health
26. _____, people continue to spend hours lying in the sun in the middle of the day.
 a. Although warning about the potential danger of sunbathing
 b. In spite of warning about the potential danger of sunbathing
 c. Despite they are warned about the potential danger of sunbathing
 d. Despite being warned about the potential danger of sunbathing
27. Kelvin changed his major from Geography to Business Studies _____.
 a. so as to his job prospects will be improved
 b. in order to his job prospects will be improved
 c. in order that improve his job prospects
 d. in order to improve his job prospects
28. I felt nervous, but kept it to myself _____.
 a. so as not to worry my friends b. so that not worry my friends
 c. in order I did not worry my friends d. in order to my friends were not worried
29. What do I have to do _____?
 a. so that convince them b. in order that convince them
 c. so to convince them d. so as to convince them
30. Sally brought a painting home from school _____.
 a. shown to her mother b. to show to her mother
 c. and show to her mother d. she showing to her mother
31. _____, we would not have got any achievement last year.
 a. As your recommendation b. If to recommend
 c. To be recommended d. Without your recommendation
32. But for Kevin's assistance, we would not have completed our term before the deadline.
 a. If Kevin had not assisted me b. If Kevin did not assist me
 c. Unless Kevin had not assisted me d. Provided that Kevin does not assist me
33. _____, the bird may abandon the nest.
 a. As if they are disturbed b. If disturbed
 c. When disturbing d. On disturb

34. Unless you had interfered with my work, I would have been successful.
- Due to your interference with my work
 - As to your interference with my work
 - With your interference with my work
 - Without your interference with my work
35. Papers which are submitted late will be marked down one grade.
- submit late
 - submitting late
 - to submit late
 - submitted late
36. The people who are from Iowa are especially nice.
- from Iowa
 - to be from Iowa
 - being from Iowa
 - are from Iowa
37. The bomb that was buried in the sand exploded violently.
- was buried in the sand
 - to be buried in the sand
 - burying in the sand
 - buried in the sand
38. The student who scored the highest in math was praised by the professor.
- score the highest in math
 - scoring the highest in math
 - to score the highest in math
 - scored the highest in math
39. John was the first student of our school who studied at Oxford University.
- studied at Oxford University
 - studying at Oxford University
 - to study at Oxford University
 - he studied at Oxford University
40. We have a lot of things that we have to do, so we cannot find time when we can go out with you.
- do / going out with you
 - to do / to go out with you
 - doing / gone out with you
 - done / go out with you
41. Mary has just taken us to a bookstore where we can the books we want.
- buy the books we want
 - buying the books we want
 - to buy the books we want
 - bought the books we want
42. Look! The boy who is wearing a white cap is my son.
- wearing a white cap
 - to wear a white cap
 - worn a white cap
 - wear a white cap
43. I went shopping and I also visited the museum when I visited London.
- So going shopping,
 - To go shopping,
 - Thanks to going shopping
 - In addition to going shopping,
44. Bill Clinton, who is the former president of the USA, is from Arkansas.
- the former president of the USA
 - to be the former president of the USA
 - being the former president of the USA
 - been the former president of the USA
45. The money which had been placed on the table was mine.
- placing on the table
 - to place on the table
 - placed on the table
 - place on the table
46. John decided to quit job _____ because he had performed badly.
- before dismissing him
 - before being dismissed
 - as dismissed him
 - to dismiss him

47. I am so nervous that I really do not know _____.
- a. doing what b. what doing c. what to do d. what done
48. We must make a careful preparation, for the future may bring unexpected changes.
- a. due to unexpected changes in the future
b. in spite of future unexpected changes
c. when bringing unexpected changes in the future
d. brought unexpected changes in the future
49. _____, we cannot go with you.
- a. As a conference at 9 o'clock b. To be conference at 9 o'clock
c. Being the conference at 9 o'clock d. With the conference at 9 o'clock
50. They had to stop their project _____.
- a. to be financial difficulties b. being financial difficulties
c. in addition to financial difficulties d. owing to financial difficulties

MODULE 22

INVERSION (*Phép đảo*)

Phép đảo của động từ là sự đảo ngược vị trí giữa động từ/ trợ động từ và chủ ngữ (nếu trong câu không có trợ động từ thì phải mượn trợ động từ *to do*).
Hình thức đảo ngữ được dùng khi:

1. Trạng từ, trạng ngữ phủ định, hoặc các từ giới hạn (*hardly, seldom, rarely, never, little,...*) được đặt ở đầu câu để nhấn mạnh.

Ví dụ: **Seldom have I** seen such an interesting film.

(*Hiếm khi tôi xem được một bộ phim hay như vậy.*)

Not a single word did she say. (*Cô ấy chẳng nói gì cả.*)

At no time did he get permission for what he wanted to do.

(*Không khi nào anh ấy được phép làm những điều anh ấy muốn.*)

- Một số trạng từ, trạng ngữ thường được theo sau bởi hình thức đảo ngữ:
never, rarely, seldom, little, hardly... when, scarcely... when, no sooner... than, only by, only in this way, not only... but also..., only then, not (even) once, not often, on no account, in no way, under no circumstances, by no means, at no time, nowhere (else), v.v.

- * **Lưu ý**: *only after..., only when..., only if..., not until / till...*, có hình thức đảo ngữ ở mệnh đề chính.

Ví dụ: **Only when** I called her **did I** learn that she was seriously ill.

(*Chỉ khi gọi cho cô ấy tôi mới biết là cô ấy bệnh nặng.*)

Not until you finish your homework **can you** go out.

(*Chừng nào làm xong bài tập về nhà, con mới được đi chơi.*)

2. Cụm từ *so + adjective/ adverb* hoặc *such + be + noun* được đặt ở đầu câu để nhấn mạnh.

Ví dụ: **So sad was she** that she could not say anything.

(*Cô ấy buồn đến nỗi chẳng nói năng gì.*)

Such was the good novel that I read it during the night.
(Quyển tiểu thuyết hay đến nỗi tôi đã đọc suốt đêm.)

3. Câu điều kiện bỏ IF (với các trợ động từ *were, should* và *had*).
Ví dụ: **Were he** here, he would help us. (Nếu anh ấy ở đây, anh ấy sẽ giúp chúng ta.) [= **If he were** here, he would help us.]
4. Cụm trạng từ chỉ nơi chốn hoặc phương hướng đứng đầu câu (đảo toàn bộ động từ ra trước chủ ngữ).
Ví dụ: Under the tree **was lying one of the biggest men** I had ever seen. (Nằm dưới gốc cây là một trong những người đàn ông to nhất mà tôi từng gặp.)
Out into the street **ran the thieves**. (Những tên trộm chạy ra đường.)
5. *Here, there, first, last* đứng đầu câu (đảo toàn bộ động từ ra trước chủ ngữ).
Ví dụ: There **comes the bus**. (Xe buýt đến rồi.)
Last went the tiger tamer. (Đi sau cùng là người huấn luyện cạp.)
6. *So, neither, nor* đứng đầu câu.
Ví dụ: I am a student. ~So **am I**. (Tôi là sinh viên. ~Tôi cũng vậy.)
I don't like coffee. ~Nor/ Neither **do I**. (Tôi không thích cà phê. ~Tôi cũng không.)

MULTIPLE CHOICE

Choose a, b, c, or d that best completes the sentence.

1. Never in her life _____ this exhilarating emotion.

a. she experienced	b. she did experience
c. she had experienced	d. had she experienced
2. _____ seen such awful behavior.

a. Have I never before	b. Before have I never
c. Never before I have	d. Never before have I
3. They were wealthy. Money was plentiful, and _____ to be very bothered about levels of expenditure.

a. rarely anyone seemed	b. rarely did anyone seem
c. did anyone rarely seem	d. rarely anyone did seem
4. Not only do I enjoy classical music, _____ a season ticket to the symphony.

a. but I also have	b. but also have	c. but also I have	d. I but also have
--------------------	------------------	--------------------	--------------------
5. _____ so upset!

a. Has the boss seldom been	b. Seldom the boss has been
c. Seldom has the boss been	d. Has the boss been seldom
6. _____ the situation.

a. Little he understands	b. Little he understood
c. Little did he understand	d. Did he understand little
7. There _____.

a. comes my bus	b. does my bus come	c. my bus come	d. did my bus come
-----------------	---------------------	----------------	--------------------
8. _____ his terrible secret.

a. Did they learn only later	b. Only later they did learn
c. Only later they learnt	d. Only later did they learn

9. - I'm from Turkey.
- _____.
- a. Am I, too b. I am, so c. So am I d. Either am I
10. I cannot swim very well _____.
- a. and neither my sister can b. and neither can my sister
c. and so my sister can d. and so can my sister
11. So difficult _____ that _____ three months to prepare.
- a. is the test / do the students need b. the test is / do the students need
c. is the test / the students need d. the test is / the students need
12. _____ the problem, he wouldn't have committed those mistakes.
- a. Had he understood b. He had understood
c. If had he understood d. Unless had he understood
13. _____ a more beautiful sight.
- a. Nowhere hadn't Susan seen b. Had Susan seen nowhere
c. Nowhere Susan had seen d. Nowhere had Susan seen
14. By the gate _____.
- a. a little girl stood b. stood a little girl
c. did a little girl stand d. a little girl did stand
15. Not until the next morning _____ how serious _____.
- a. she realized / was it b. she realized / it was
c. did she realize / was it d. did she realize / it was
16. Not till _____ that he had lost the key.
- a. he got home did he find b. he got home he found
c. did he get home did he find d. did he get home he found
17. Only when _____ into smart clothes after the match _____ to talk to the TV reporters
- a. the players had changed / they were allowed
b. the players had changed / were they allowed
c. had the players changed / were they allowed
d. had the players changed / they were allowed
18. No sooner _____ the door than _____ it was locked.
- a. had I reached / did I realize b. I had reached / did I realize
c. had I reached / I realized d. I had reached / I realized
19. _____, he can never follow me.
- a. Fast as he runs b. Fast as does he run
c. As he runs fast d. As does he run fast
20. _____ John that she talked about him all the time.
- a. Did so much she adore b. Did she adored so much
c. So much she adored d. So much did she adore
21. _____ kinder to his employees, his business would not have collapsed.
- a. Mr. Chan had been b. Had if Mr. Chan been
c. Had Mr. Chan been d. If had Mr. Chan been
22. Scarcely _____ out of bed when _____.
- a. had I got / did the doorbell ring b. had I got / the doorbell rang
c. I had got / did the doorbell ring d. I had got / the doorbell rang

23. Little _____ how much trouble _____ in.
a. you know / are you b. you know / you are
c. do you know / are you d. do you know / you are
24. On the table _____.
a. lay a yellow cat b. a yellow cat lay c. did a yellow cat lie d. a yellow cat lies
25. Such _____ that _____ whenever it was on.
a. the popularity of the film was / the streets were deserted
b. was the popularity of the film / the streets were deserted
c. the popularity of the film was / were the streets deserted
d. was the popularity of the film / were the streets deserted
26. They can neither read nor write, _____ such concepts.
a. they can nor comprehend b. nor can they comprehend
c. nor they can comprehend d. can they nor comprehend
27. Hardly _____ before _____.
a. had I left / did the trouble start b. had I left / the trouble started
c. I had left / the trouble started d. I had left / did the trouble start
28. Only after _____.
a. the teacher understood the situation and did he make a comment
b. understanding the situation the teacher made a comment
c. the teacher understood the situation and made a comment
d. understanding the situation did the teacher make a comment
29. _____ to win the election, what _____ first?
a. You were / you would do b. You were / would you do
c. Were you / you would do d. Were you / would you do
30. Down _____.
a. fell half a dozen apples b. half a dozen apples fell
c. did half a dozen apples fall d. half a dozen apples fall
31. Only then _____ the danger _____ in.
a. did I see / which we were b. I saw / which we were
c. did I see / which were we d. I saw / which were we
32. Not a single word _____.
a. said she b. she says c. did she say d. she said
33. Carefully though _____, he could not manage to escape the accident.
a. he drove b. did he drive c. does he drive d. he is driving
34. Not until 1911 _____.
a. identified the first of the vitamins
b. the first of the vitamins identified
c. was the first of the vitamins identified
d. the first of the vitamins was identified
35. Only after the film started _____ that _____ it before.
a. I realized / I had seen b. did I realize / I had seen
c. I realized / had I seen d. did I realize / had I seen
36. _____ will we let you live independently.
a. Not until do you grow up b. Until you grow up
c. Until do you grow up d. Not until you grow up

37. No sooner _____ married than _____ to argue.
 a. they had got / did they begin b. they had got / they began
 c. had they got / did they begin d. had they got / they began
38. I had to show him my identity card and _____.
 a. only then he let me in b. only then did he let me in
 c. did he let me in only then d. did only then he let me in
39. No matter how _____, he cannot make ends meet.
 a. he works hard b. does he work hard
 c. hard he works d. hard does he work
40. _____ the clothes since her husband bought a washing machine.
 a. Any longer she has washed b. Any longer has she washed
 c. No longer she has washed d. No longer has she washed
41. _____ us to have private talks in class.
 a. At no time does our teacher allow b. At no time our teacher allows
 c. At any time does our teacher allow d. At any time our teacher allows
42. She is beautiful, _____.
 a. as her daughter is b. as is her daughter
 c. neither is her daughter d. neither her daughter is
43. _____ what surprises we have in store for her.
 a. Little she knows b. Does she little know
 c. Little does she know d. Does she know little
44. _____ this match.
 a. No way will you win b. No way you will win
 c. Any way will you win d. Any way you will win
45. Whatever reasons _____, _____ them.
 a. do you state / I never believe b. do you state / never do I believe
 c. you state / I never believe d. you state / never do I believe
46. _____ not for his deafness, _____ on the phone.
 a. Were it / could he communicate b. Were it / he could communicate
 c. It were / could he communicate d. It were / he could communicate
47. _____ me a shelter _____ dinner for us.
 a. Not only they gave / but did they also prepare
 b. Not only they gave / but they also prepared
 c. Not only did they give / but also prepared
 d. Not only did they give / but they also prepared
48. _____ such a more comfortable hotel.
 a. Nowhere in the area can you find b. Nowhere in the area you can find
 c. Anywhere in the area can you find d. Anywhere in the area you can find
49. Down _____ and up _____.
 a. the rain came / went the umbrellas b. came the rain / the umbrellas went
 c. the rain came / the umbrellas went d. came the rain / went the umbrellas
50. _____ us an apology.
 a. Not once the manager offered b. Not once did the manager offer
 c. Did the manager not once offer d. Didn't once the manager offer

PRACTICE TEST 1

Choose a, b, c, or d that is the best alternative.

1. He _____ to make breakfast before his wife _____ up.
a. has already started / wakes b. had already started / woke
c. will already start / is waking d. is already staring / has waken
2. The musician _____ the guitar for about an hour.
a. is playing b. has been playing c. will be playing d. was playing
3. When I _____ home yesterday morning, my son _____ and my wife _____ to work.
a. have arrived / slept / went b. arrived / was sleeping / had gone
c. had arrived / had slept / has gone d. was arriving / would sleep / could go
4. It is Mary's new house. It _____ a fortune!
a. shall cost b. needn't cost c. will cost d. must cost
5. In the end Gary's injury was not very serious. We _____ so much.
a. could worry b. will not have worried
c. should have worried d. needn't have worried
6. _____ we go out for dinner tonight? – Yes, let's.
a. Must b. Shall c. Should d. Need
7. Although Jack is only ten years old, he is well-known _____ his verse.
a. for b. in c. at d. on
8. I do not care _____ card games _____ general.
a. for / in b. of / at c. about / with d. with / for
9. The Pikes earn money _____ raising poultry.
a. by b. on c. with d. through
10. He promised _____ me some money but he failed _____ his words.
a. to lend / to keep b. lending / for keeping
c. of lending / keep d. to lend / keeping
11. I think she actually expects me _____ the washing up for her.
a. do b. to do c. done d. doing
12. My friends asked me _____ with them but I refused.
a. to go shopping b. for going to shop c. going to shop d. go shopping
13. George's advisor spends _____ with him.
a. many times b. a lot of time c. times d. a few time
14. He does not know _____ people in the class.
a. many b. much c. a little d. some
15. Johnny does not have _____.
a. many suit b. many suits c. a lot of suit d. much suit
16. You can _____ your coat if you feel hot.
a. go off b. take off c. wear out d. go with
17. The bomb _____ and three people were killed.
a. got in b. put away c. went off d. stayed up
18. Though I tried my best, I failed to _____ them.
a. keep up with b. run out of c. get together d. go away from

37. I think Jane deserved to be fired for her _____ .
 a. totally behavior irresponsible b. behavior totally irresponsible
 c. irresponsible totally behavior d. totally irresponsible behavior
38. _____ appeared to be coming from the science lab next door.
 a. The unpleasant odor of burning plastic
 b. The odor unpleasant of burning plastic
 c. The unpleasant odor of plastic burning
 d. The odor unpleasant of plastic burning
39. Some roses were planted _____.
 a in the garden yesterday by Tommy b. yesterday in the garden by Tommy
 c. by Tommy yesterday in the garden d. in the garden by Tommy yesterday
40. The books that are on the desk are _____.
 a. my b. mine c. me d. myself
41. I like _____ trousers. _____ are very fashionable.
 a. your / They b. yours / Their c. you / Theirs d. you / Them
42. John invited David and Gill and two of _____ friends.
 a. they b. them c. their d. theirs
43. The beginning of the Symbolist movement in art _____ having begun in the late 1880's.
 a. is regarded as b. is regarded c. is regarding d. regarded as
44. The vague and misleading instructions _____ in two entirely opposite ways.
 a. could easily been interpreted b. could be easily interpret
 c. could easily be interpreted d. could easily interpreted
45. Successful applicants _____ attracting salary, bonus and benefits.
 a. will pay b. will be paid c. will be paying d. are paying
46. _____ to explain the lesson _____ the classroom.
 a. Hardly the teacher had started / when did the principal enter
 b. Had hardly the teacher started / the principal entered
 c. Hardly had the teacher started / when the principal entered
 d. The teacher hardly had started / when entered the principal
47. _____ most of us got poor results.
 a. So difficult was the test that b. Was difficult so the test that
 c. So difficult the test was that d. So difficult was the test
48. _____ such a talented singer.
 a. Have we enjoyed seldom b. Seldom we have enjoyed
 c. Seldom have we enjoyed d. Have we seldom enjoyed
49. Mary said that she had been ill _____.
 a. yesterday b. last day c. the day before d. the next day
50. Anne asked _____ the shopping.
 a. if she had to do b. that she had to do
 c. if she must do d. whether she must do
51. Justin asked me _____.
 a. what I was doing b. what was I doing
 c. what are you doing d. what you are doing

52. ____ knows no geographic borders, no age limits, and no ethnical boundaries.
 a. Poor b. The poor c. Poverty d. Poorly
53. The contestant hit the target with great _____.
 a. accurate b. accurately c. accuracy d. accuration
54. He is very _____ in plants and animals.
 a. interest b. interested c. interesting d. interestingly
55. The teacher did not know _____.
 a. why he was absent b. why was he was absent
 c. where he was absent d. where was he absent
56. Can you please tell me _____?
 a. what time the next bus arrives b. what time arrives the next bus
 c. when arrives the next bus d. when does the bus arrive
57. _____ is a mystery. I wish that I could ask him.
 a. How did it b. What he did it c. How he did it d. When did it
58. I was too tired to continue my work.
 a. Though I was tired, I would try to continue my work.
 b. I was so tired that I could not continue my work.
 c. My work was continued despite my tiredness.
 d. I was tired enough to continue my work.
59. "I will do it for you, Mary", Peter said.
 a. Peter advised Mary to do it. b. Peter advised Mary not to do it.
 c. Peter promised to do it for Mary. d. Peter wanted Mary to do it.
60. This course will take us six months to complete.
 a. In six months' time, this course will be completed.
 b. We will take a course in six months.
 c. To complete this course will last over six months.
 d. Six months is not enough to complete this course.
61. The victims _____ injured in the disaster are recovering in hospital.
 a. were b. which were c. who were d. whose were
62. A guide is a person _____ tourists around a place.
 a. shows b. who shows c. whom shows d. which is showing
63. Love is a feeling _____.
 a. difficult to describe b. which is difficult to describe
 c. whom is difficult to describe d. is difficult to describe
64. Ann was waiting for me _____.
 a. so I arrived b. when I arrived
 c. after I had arrived d. since I arrived
65. Jake will have finished the report _____.
 a. for the boss needs it b. up to the time the boss will need it
 c. before the boss will need it d. by the time the boss needs it
66. _____ we were having the picnic, it started to rain.
 a. While b. After c. Till d. As long as
67. We can go _____.
 a. wherever you like b. what you like
 c. you like wherever d. how you like

68. Today is _____ it was yesterday.
 a. hotter than b. as hot than c. more hot than d. many hotter than
69. The results are not _____ we have ever expected.
 a. as better as b. more better than c. better as d. as good as
70. Earning money has always been the thing that pleases him most. _____ he becomes, _____ he is.
 a. The more rich / the more happy b. The richest / the happiest
 c. The richer / the happier d. Richer and richer / Happier and happier
71. The climber was seventy miles in the wrong direction and got _____.
 a. more panicked b. the more panicked
 c. more than panicked d. more and more panicked
72. _____ I had learned harder when I was at university.
 a. If b. Provided c. Unless d. If only
73. _____ he gets here soon, we will have to start the meeting without him.
 a. Unless b. If only c. Even if d. If
74. _____ at home, I would enjoy my favorite show.
 a. Suppose I am b. Unless were I c. Were I d. If were I
75. _____, they would not have sold their house.
 a. If they had had financial difficulty
 b. But for their financial difficulty
 c. Unless their financial difficulty
 d. Providing that they did not have financial difficulty
76. _____, she stopped to help the blind woman.
 a. As in a hurry b. Even though she hurried
 c. Despite of her hurry d. In spite hurrying
77. _____ she was afraid of going out alone at night, she decided she had to find out where he had gone.
 a. Despite the fact that b. Despite
 c. In spite of d. In spite the fact that
78. They had a lovely holiday _____.
 a. though it rained everyday b. even though the rain
 c. as though the rain d. in spite it rained everyday
79. You should behave toward others _____.
 a. as you would like to be treated b. as would you like to be treated
 c. as being treated d. as though being treated
80. Jack smiled _____ a private joke.
 a. as though enjoying b. as he is enjoying
 c. as if he would be enjoying d. as though he had been enjoying
81. It looks _____ the train would be late.
 a. as b. though c. as though d. although
82. It was _____ interesting novel that I stayed up all night to finish it.
 a. such an b. a such c. so an d. so
83. Mary has _____ her phone rings constantly.
 a. so many friends that b. so much friends that
 c. such many friends that d. many so friends that

97. Coal has provided the majority of our electricity and was a principal source
 A B C
 of energy since the Industrial Revolution.
 D
98. The symptoms of diabetes in the early stages are too slight that people do not
 A B C D
 notice them.
99. Because human eyes are not very good for determining speeds of approaching
 A B
 objects, radar can show a pilot how fast nearly planes are moving.
 C D
100. Not only knowledge and skills or attitudes need to be cultivated for students'
 A B C
 future adjustment to society.
 D

PRACTICE TEST 2

Choose a, b, c, or d that is the best alternative.

1. You _____ on the bus since 10 a.m. It _____ now 10:40 a.m. and you _____ to your destination.
 - a. are sitting / will be / have travelled
 - b. will have sat / has been / will travel
 - c. have been sitting / is / are still travelling
 - d. had been sitting / was / was still travelling
2. I _____ him these details, so he _____ some research on his own.
 - a. will not tell / would have done
 - b. have not told / would do
 - c. do not tell / could not have done
 - d. did not tell / must have done
3. She _____ on the phone with her mother for 40 minutes, and she _____ to stop.
 - a. is speaking / will not seem
 - b. will be speaking / is not seeming
 - c. has been speaking / does not seem
 - d. has spoken / did not seem
4. The doctor said John _____ keep on playing football.
 - a. can
 - b. could
 - c. will
 - d. shall
5. I am afraid that I _____ remember his name, but Jane _____ know.
 - a. cannot / may
 - b. would not / will
 - c. needn't / mustn't
 - d. ought not to / would
6. In the end it did not rain, so I _____ my raincoat.
 - a. shouldn't bring
 - b. might be bringing
 - c. needn't bring
 - d. needn't have brought
7. Most people know that smoking is harmful _____ their health but they are addicted _____ the practice.
 - a. of / for
 - b. to / to
 - c. on / upon
 - d. at / of
8. Tom apologized _____ breaking Tina's valuable pot. He said that he did not do it _____ purpose.
 - a. for / on
 - b. against / off
 - c. about / through
 - d. on / from
9. _____ the end _____ next month, we will have completed our course.
 - a. Through / via
 - b. On / for
 - c. After / from
 - d. By / of

10. They invited me _____ at the conference.
 a. speak b. to speak c. speaking d. spoken
11. I saw the customer _____ in the hall. He asked _____ the manager.
 a. wait / seeing b. to wait / for seen c. waited / see d. waiting / to see
12. We never forget _____ the President at the graduation ceremony when we were at university.
 a. to meet b. meet c. meeting d. met
13. _____ does not like learning history.
 a. A great deal of students b. Many a student
 c. Many students d. Every students
14. She has _____ business contacts in Las Vegas.
 a. a large amount of b. much of c. the number of d. a number of
15. _____ must come to class on time.
 a. Most of students b. All student c. Every students d. Each student
16. Barriers were built to _____ the flood water.
 a. go through b. put away c. keep back d. give up
17. When we visit a park we may see a notice saying "_____ the grass".
 a. Get on b. Take in c. Go up d. Keep off
18. I cannot wait until they _____ the new model.
 a. send through b. pick up c. give away d. bring out
19. We will give you a bicycle _____ you do well on your exams.
 a. only if b. until c. because d. though
20. _____ you have lots of time to do your homework, I have very little time indeed.
 a. Since b. Whereas c. Unless d. If
21. The judge dismissed the case _____ there was not enough evidence.
 a. so b. so that c. when d. because
22. _____ up at the airport? – John did.
 a. Whom picked you b. Whose did you pick
 c. Who picked you d. Who did you pick
23. _____ up early? – To do morning exercise.
 a. Why did John get b. How did John get
 c. Why John got d. How John got
24. Let's go somewhere for lunch, _____?
 a. do you b. shall we c. mustn't you d. won't us
25. Everyone in the committee _____ to express his/her ideas.
 a. allows b. allow c. are allowed d. is allowed
26. It was the speaker, not his ideas, that _____ the students to riot.
 a. has provoked b. provoke c. are provoking d. were provoking
27. The students and instructor _____ for a new facility by next year.
 a. are hoping b. hope c. hopes d. were hoping
28. I am going to the _____ to buy some medicine.
 a. chemists's b. chemists c. chemist d. chemist's
29. When Jenny was a child, reading _____ was her hobby.
 a. picture books b. picture of books c. books of pictures d. books' pictures

30. The project may be finished in _____.
- a. two year's time b. two years time c. two years' time d. two-years time
31. We were unable to carry out the experiment _____.
- a. on account of a malfunction in the computer
b. being a malfunction in the computer
c. as the computer malfunction
d. there was a computer malfunction
32. It is colder and wetter _____.
- a. as in the north of Germany b. in the north of Germany
c. it is in North Germany d. of North Germany
33. _____, they agreed to all our demands.
- a. My great surprise b. To my great surprise
c. Surprising d. It was surprise
34. _____ Austria is a member of _____ European Union.
- a. \emptyset / the b. an / an c. an / the d. the / an
35. In my spare time, I play _____ guitar and collect _____ stamps.
- a. the / the b. the / \emptyset c. \emptyset / \emptyset d. \emptyset / the
36. John is _____ English. He comes from _____ United Kingdom.
- a. the / an b. an / an c. \emptyset / \emptyset d. \emptyset / the
37. We will not spend _____.
- a. at home next year our holiday b. our next year holiday at home
c. next year our holiday at home d. our holiday at home next year
38. Old John sometimes goes out with _____.
- a. a dirty old cotton tie b. a cotton dirty old tie
c. an old dirty cotton tie d. an old cotton dirty tie
39. One of Jane's favorite subjects in school is drama because _____ lots of fun and enjoys being part of it all.
- a. has really she b. she really has c. really she has d. has she really
40. I think John is not strong enough to do the work by _____.
- a. he b. him c. his d. himself
41. Their house has _____ own swimming pool.
- a. their b. its c. hers d. his
42. I prefer the second option. _____ advantages are simplicity and cheapness.
- a. It b. Its c. It's d. Itself
43. German _____ in Austria.
- a. speaks b. is spoken c. is speaking d. has spoken
44. Much of dangerous smoke goes into the air and _____ by the clouds for great distances.
- a. carries b. carrying c. carried d. is carried
45. The red button _____ in case of emergency.
- a. should not push b. should not pushed
c. should not be pushing d. should not be pushed
46. _____, he would have some good ideas.
- a. Unless were Peter here b. If here were Peter
c. If were Peter here d. Were Peter here

47. _____ the priest started the ceremony.
 a. Had the couple no sooner arrived than
 b. No sooner had the couple arrived than
 c. No sooner the couple had arrived than
 d. Had the couple arrived no sooner than
48. _____ here.
 a. At no time is parking allowed b. At no time is parking not allowed
 c. At no time parking is allowed d. Is parking allowed at any time
49. The teacher told his student _____ to school late.
 a. does not go b. did not go c. not go d. not to go
50. He asked me _____.
 a. where were you born b. where I was born
 c. where I had been born d. where had I born
51. John said that he _____ for that company for ten years.
 a. was working b. has worked c. has been working d. had been working
52. Robots are growing in _____ and their use in _____ is becoming more widespread.
 a. complexity / industry b. complex / industrial
 c. complexly / industrialize d. complex / industrially
53. Her _____ in hearing resulted from a childhood _____.
 a. difficult / ill b. difficulty / illness c. difficultly / ill d. difficultly / ill
54. We could not continue due to our _____.
 a. tired b. tired c. tiring d. tiredness
55. The company will comply with _____.
 a. whatever the board of directors decides
 b. whatever does the board of directors decide
 c. the board of directors decides whatever
 d. however the board of directors decides
56. I think _____.
 a. that Dr. Pike is a good instructor b. is that Dr. Pike a good instructor
 c. if that Dr. Pike is a good instructor d. whether is Dr. Pike a good instructor
57. I'll bet you can't guess _____.
 a. that what is my occupation b. how is my occupation
 c. what my occupation is d. what is my occupation
58. There will be someone meeting you on arrival.
 a. When you arrive, someone will meet you.
 b. Arriving, someone will meet you.
 c. You will not be met when arriving.
 d. No one will meet you as you arrive
59. The last time I saw him was in 2001.
 a. Since 2001, I have often seen him. b. I did not see him in 2001.
 c. In 2001, I saw him many times. d. I haven't seen him since 2001.
60. We are studying Unit 3 in this book.
 a. We have completed two units in this book so far.
 b. Three units in this book have been studied up to now.

- c. We have already studied three units in this book.
d. Unit 3 in this book has been completed.
61. We invited the boy _____ Tom had met the week before to the party.
a. whom b. whose c. why d. where
62. The world's first satellite was called _____ was about the size of a basket ball.
a. Sputnik I, which b. Sputnik I, that c. Sputnik I which d. Sputnik I, whose
63. That is the building _____ they shot the film 'Vanilla Sky'.
a. which b. that c. in that d. where
64. Agatha was making coffee _____ I was cooking the bacon.
a. while b. as soon as c. as long as d. until
65. _____, I have been lonely.
a. Since my grandfather dies b. Whenever my grandfather died
c. Since my grandfather died d. Whenever my grandfather dies
66. We will wait _____.
a. when finishing his homework b. before he finishes his homework
c. no sooner he finishes his homework d. until he finishes his homework
67. _____ I always seem to bump into him.
a. I go b. Wherever I go c. I go where d. Whatever I go
68. The faster we finish, _____.
a. the sooner we can leave b. we can leave sooner and sooner
c. the sooner can we leave d. we can leave the sooner
69. This is _____ car in the garage.
a. so expensive b. more expensive than
c. as expensive as d. the least expensive
70. _____ live in Shanghai _____ in any other city in China.
a. Many people / than b. More people / than
c. As much people / as d. Less people / as
71. The summer is coming. It gets _____.
a. hot and hot b. the more hot c. the hotter d. hotter and hotter
72. If he _____ well on the training courses last year, he _____ offered the promotion now.
a. did / were b. did / would be
c. had done / would have been d. had done / would be
73. _____ I would take the opportunity to talk to the boss today.
a. I were you b. If I were you c. If I had been you d. Had I been you
74. You will fail _____ you study harder.
a. if b. unless c. provided d. supposed
75. We'll go to Kelly's to celebrate _____.
a. if you win b. if you will win
c. supposed you won d. providing you would win
76. _____, we got up early and started the trip.
a. Tired as we were b. Despite we were tired
c. Even though were we tired d. In spite we were tired
77. They went swimming _____ the coldness of the water.
a. Even if b. As though c. In spite of d. Despite of

94. Like all industrial processes, nuclear power generation has by-product wastes, so as
 A B C D
 used fuels, radioactive waste, and heat.
95. The United States is a highly developed and industrializing society.
 A B C D
96. We use lot of energy - in our homes, in businesses, in industry, and for
 A B
traveling between different places.
 C D
97. Ancient people burned wood to keep them warm and cooking their food.
 A B C D
98. In any parts of the world, wood is still the main source of energy.
 A B C D
99. The Mayan Indians lived in Mexico for thousand of years before the Spanish
 A B C
 arrived in the 1500s.
 D
100. Teachers at the schools work hardly for at least twelve years to train their
 A B C
 students to become good readers.
 D

PRACTICE TEST 3

Choose a, b, c, or d that is the best alternative.

- Sulphur dioxide is a _____ that is released into the atmosphere by coal-fired power stations.
 a. pollute b. pollutant c. pollution d. polluted
- Without our _____, they would not have got accomplishment.
 a. contribute b. contribution c. contributors d. contributive
- By _____, we often go to pagoda on New Year's Day.
 a. tradition b. traditional c. traditionally d. traditionalist
- Nowadays people become aware _____ secondhand smoke.
 a. of b. for c. up d. on
- The search _____ alternative sources _____ energy has led in various directions.
 a. on / with b. at / through c. for / of d. in / off
- At the time being, many products are nearly identical _____ one another _____ quality and price.
 a. upon / at b. with / of c. to / in d. for / off
- There is nothing wrong with the photocopier. It just needs _____.
 a. to service b. service c. servicing d. serviced
- I will make a note in my diary so that I will remember _____ you the information you need.
 a. send b. to send c. sent d. sending
- Curtis delayed _____ the airplane because the weather was bad.
 a. catch b. to catch c. caught d. catching

10. I ____ no difficulty in learning Russian since I ____ to learn it 3 years ago.
a. have had / began
b. had had / begin
c. had / has begun
d. am having / begin
11. Someone _____ the cake before I _____.
a. was taking / was doing
b. will have taken / will do
c. has been taking / am doing
d. had taken / did
12. The apples _____ all summer and now they _____. They look delicious.
a. had grown / were ready to pick
b. have been growing / are ready to be picked
c. are growing / have been ready to be picked
d. will be growing / are ready to pick
13. I want a new house. It _____ have a swimming pool, but it _____ have a nice garden.
a. needn't / must
b. should not / could
c. may not / shall
d. cannot / ought to
14. The lady you met yesterday _____ Mary. I am sure that she has gone to London for two weeks.
a. can't be
b. cannot have been
c. should not be
d. will not have been
15. Take your time. You _____ back before eight.
a. should have been
b. needn't be
c. could have been
d. may have been
16. She keeps _____ in the refrigerator.
a. all orange
b. all oranges
c. any oranges
d. most orange
17. We keep _____ in the cupboard.
a. rices
b. the rice
c. the rices
d. many rice
18. While the problem seems overwhelming, even _____ money can make a difference.
a. a little bit of
b. a few
c. any
d. many
19. Four years _____ a long time to spend away from your friends and family.
a. were
b. have been
c. is
d. are
20. Politics _____ something too difficult for me to understand.
a. is
b. are
c. were
d. have been
21. To an outsider, the economics of this country _____ in disarray.
a. are not
b. are
c. seem to be
d. seems to be
22. _____! The street is wet and slippery.
a. Look out
b. Pass on
c. Slow up
d. Hold on
23. Her little boy is so imaginative. He can _____ stores himself.
a. help out
b. do over
c. think out
d. make up
24. I wonder how Sam _____ such a selfish person.
a. keep up with
b. got on with
c. take off
d. go away from
25. We are going out to eat _____ we finish taking the test.
a. after
b. so
c. but
d. and
26. I wanted to sit in the front of the balcony _____ I ordered my tickets early.
a. before
b. and
c. or
d. so
27. The concert was cancelled _____ we went to a night club instead.
a. since
b. in order that
c. so
d. as
28. _____ is their child? - Five.
a. How often
b. How old
c. How long
d. How far

47. The damage _____ worth more than 2 million pounds.
 a. was reported to be
 b. reported to be
 c. reported was
 d. is reporting to be
48. The bread _____.
 a. was cut with a big knife
 b. was cut by a big knife
 c. cut with a big knife
 d. is cutting with a big knife
49. _____ mowing the lawn _____ it started raining.
 a. No sooner had I started / but
 b. No sooner I had started / than
 c. No sooner had I started / than
 d. Had I started no sooner / and
50. There _____.
 a. comes the boss
 b. the boss comes
 c. does the boss come
 d. did the boss come
51. _____ that she was allergic to cats.
 a. Never she has said
 b. Has she said never
 c. Has she never said
 d. Never has she said
52. Frank wanted to know _____.
 a. how much money could Lisa earn
 b. how much money Lisa could earn
 c. how much money can Lisa earn
 d. how much money Lisa can earn
53. The boss _____ because he was too lazy.
 a. threatened to dismiss him
 b. threatened him to dismiss
 c. suggested him to dismiss
 d. promised him to dismiss
54. The villagers _____ them to repair roads and plant trees.
 a. promised us to help
 b. apologized us for helping
 c. ordered us for helping
 d. thanked us for helping
55. _____ very surprising.
 a. He came here was
 b. He came here
 c. That he came here was
 d. That he came here
56. It is important _____.
 a. that we study hard for this exam
 b. study hard for this exam
 c. studying hard for this exam
 d. that whether we study hard for this exam
57. At last she realized _____.
 a. he was deceiving her
 b. was he deceiving her
 c. if was he deceiving her
 d. when was he deceiving her
58. Peter does not work for our company any more.
 a. Peter gets used to working for our company.
 b. Peter used to work for our company.
 c. Peter are used to working for our company
 d. Peter did not use to work for our company
59. You should have seen the boss as soon as you arrived.
 a. The boss did not want to see you when you arrived.
 b. You were supposed to see boss when you arrived.
 c. After your arrival, you came to see the boss.
 d. You came to see the boss as soon as you arrived.
60. I'd prefer it if you didn't smoke in here.
 a. Smoking is banned in here.

- b. People prefer to smoke in here.
 c. Both you and I prefer smoking in here.
 d. Would you mind not smoking in here?
61. The friends _____ at university are coming to visit next week.
 a. we met b. when we met c. whose we met d. we met whom
62. _____ also goes to this school, will be attending the party next weekend.
 a. Mr. Jackson whom son b. Mr. Jackson whose son
 c. Mr. Jackson, whose son d. Mr. Jackson who son
63. It is easy to see _____ he has succeeded.
 a. the reason that b. the reason, which c. the reason, why d. the reason why
64. We need to look at this proposal very carefully _____.
 a. after we have made a decision b. before we make a decision
 c. after we are making a decision d. before we will make a decision
65. _____ the washing up, Maria put the dishes away.
 a. After I had done b. After had I done c. After I have done d. After I would do
66. Let's wait here _____.
 a. no sooner it stops raining b. by the time the rain will stop
 c. until it stops raining d. when the rain will stop
67. Soldiers must go _____.
 a. for wherever the army assigns them b. wherever the army assigns them
 c. in where the army assigns them d. as much as the army assigns them
68. That state is at least _____ England.
 a. twice as big as b. as twice big as
 c. as two times big as d. as big as twice
69. _____ live in the capital than in the whole of the rest of the country.
 a. Many people b. More people
 c. As many as people d. People more
70. The fruits of the tropics are _____.
 a. more varied as those of temperate regions
 b. as varies than the fruits of temperate regions
 c. more varied than that of temperate regions
 d. more varied than those of temperate regions
71. I think New York is one of _____ cities in the world.
 a. more wonderful b. most wonderful
 c. the most wonderful d. as much wonderful as
72. If it _____ an hour ago, we would have stayed inside.
 a. rains b. rained c. had rained d. were raining
73. _____ I had brought my laptop to the meeting yesterday.
 a. If b. If only c. Even if d. As if
74. If you meet Mary today, _____ her to ring me.
 a. tell b. to tell c. telling d. will tell
75. She had to have the operation _____.
 a. unless she would dies b. if she would die
 c. otherwise she will die d. or she would die

76. She arrived safely _____ she lost her way twice.
 a. although b. despite c. despite of d. in spite of
77. _____, he seldom helps the poor.
 a. In spite of his wealth b. Despite of his wealth
 c. In spite he is wealthy d. Despite he is wealthy
78. _____, we could not solve the problem of rubbish.
 a. Despite hard we worked b. In spite of we worked hard
 c. Though did we work hard d. Hard as we worked
79. They talked _____ the book
 a. as they had read b. if they had read
 c. as if they had read d. as if they are reading
80. Johnny ate greedily _____ he had not eaten anything for days.
 a. if b. in order to c. even if d. as if
81. Leave the documents _____.
 a. as they are b. as though they are
 c. as if they are d. like they are
82. There is _____ the environment is more and more polluted.
 a. so much carbon dioxide in the air that
 b. so many carbon dioxide in the air that
 c. so much carbon dioxide in the air as
 d. such carbon dioxide in the air as
83. She has gained _____ she cannot get into her trousers.
 a. such a lot of weight that b. so a lot of weight that
 c. such many weight that d. so weight that
84. The chemicals were _____ they caused serious damage to the environment.
 a. poisonous so that b. poisonous such that
 c. so poisonous that d. such poisonous that
85. He kept quiet _____.
 a. so that to avoid trouble b. so as to avoiding trouble
 c. in order he could avoid trouble d. in order to avoid trouble
86. She took a computer course _____.
 a. so as to she had get a better job
 b. so as that she could get a better job
 c. in order that she had ever got a better job
 d. so that she could get a better job
87. They caught a taxi _____ they could arrive at the conference on time.
 a. so that b. so as to c. in order to d. in case that
88. The judge dismissed the case _____.
 a. because of the evidence was not enough evidence
 b. because not enough evidence
 c. because of there was not enough evidence
 d. because there was not enough evidence
89. I enjoy the course _____ the professor is very good.
 a. thanks to b. due to c. because of d. since

90. Humans suffer a lot of from natural disasters because _____.
a. of the fact that their serious destruction of the environment
b. their serious destruction of the environment
c. of they have seriously destroyed the environment
d. they have seriously destroyed the environment

Error Identification

91. Some people are concerned that burning garbage may make harm to the environment.
A B C D
92. Energy conservation is any behavior it results in the use of less energy.
A B C D
93. According to the Canadian Pulp and Paper Association, Canada supplies 34% of the world's wood pulp and 49% of it newsprint paper.
A B C D
94. The richest, 5 percent of Americans, earned approximately 10 times much as the poorest, 20 percent.
A B C D
95. Mollusks, recognizing by most people by their shells, create some of the most diverse and beautiful objects on Earth.
A B C D
96. The role of women in agriculture and in rural development is increasing recognized both at international and national level.
A B C D
97. In the early years of television, educational specialists believed that it will be very useful in teaching and learning.
A B C D
98. Knowledge about farming and tools have made our work easier and more productive.
A B C D
99. The California Gold Rush was a period in American history marked by great world-wide interest concerning a gold discover in Northern California.
A B C D
100. We can burn garbage in special plants and use its heat energy to make steam to heat buildings or to generate electric.
A B C D

PRACTICE TEST 4

Choose a, b, c, or d that is the best alternative.

1. Pollution is the most important problem that all environmentalists are concerned _____.
a. upon b. off c. about d. on

2. He did not get any promotion in his study because of being absorbed ___ sport.
a. at b. through c. on d. in
3. We needn't always complain _____ pollution but we have to find out proper solutions _____ the problem.
a. on / from b. about / to c. at / over d. of / for
4. Paul stopped _____ a rest because he was very tired.
a. have b. to have c. had d. having
5. The fall in demand forced us _____ production.
a. cut b. to cut c. cutting d. for cutting
6. Eric appreciated _____ a birthday card from his mother.
a. get b. to get c. getting d. got
7. She spends _____ money on CDs.
a. too many of b. a few of
c. many of d. a rather large amount of
8. We need _____ for the party.
a. three boxes of chocolate b. three box of chocolate
c. three boxes of chocolates d. three box of chocolates
9. Pour _____ over the chicken.
a. a little of the sauce b. a few of the sauce
c. many of the sauce d. little of the sauces
10. It would take him the rest of his life to _____ that loan.
a. drive in b. throw out c. pay off d. cut down
11. He played the violin, and he _____ from all the other musicians.
a. put to b. came up c. stood out d. stopped back
12. Nina and Mary were in the kitchen, _____ after dinner.
a. cleaning up b. setting off c. getting down d. going over
13. John _____ all day before he _____ down to eat something.
a. had been working / sat b. will have worked / has sat
c. is working / sits d. has worked / will sit
14. She _____ a sort of breakdown some years ago, and since then she _____ a special treatment.
a. had / had b. had / has had
c. was having / has had d. had had / had
15. Although a lot of people _____ to alleviate the problems in Ethiopia, people _____ of starvation there every day.
a. had worked / are dying b. will be working / had died
c. are working / will die d. have worked / are still dying
16. Sami _____ lift that heavy table. He is too weak.
a. cannot b. should c. may d. might
17. If I had enough money, I _____ travel with my friends but now I _____.
a. could / cannot b. will / mustn't c. should / shall not d. might / may not
18. You failed in your final test. You _____ harder.
a. needn't have studied b. may study
c. should have studied d. would study

19. Either you can talk to him, _____ I will.
 a. or b. and c. but d. if
20. _____ you can see, we're still working.
 a. Providing b. As c. So as to d. So that
21. I do not know _____ people will support it or not.
 a. as b. whether c. but d. as if
22. _____ long has Ted been living here?
 a. Which b. What c. How d. When
23. _____? – It's Peter's.
 a. Who is it b. What is this book c. What is this d. Whose book is this
24. _____ is flight 677 supposed to arrive? - At three o'clock.
 a. What time b. For what c. How often d. What color
25. The tornadoes that tear through this county every spring _____ more than just a nuisance.
 a. is b. are c. is thought to be d. is thinking to be
26. Everyone selected to serve on this jury _____ willing to give up a lot of time.
 a. has to be b. have to be c. are d. were
27. Not only John but also I _____ practicing English in the morning.
 a. are used to b. is used to c. am used to d. were used to
28. It is only _____ far from here.
 a. a mile walk b. a mile's walk c. a walk's mile d. a walk mile
29. This is _____.
 a. New York tallest building b. New York's tallest building
 c. tallest building's New York d. tallest building New York
30. _____ has been postponed because of the heavy storm.
 a. Tomorrow match b. Tomorrow of match
 c. Tomorrow's match d. Match's tomorrow
31. She waved at her baby, _____.
 a. with happily smiling b. smiling happily
 c. and smiling happily d. to smile happily
32. _____, you have to work hard to find more encouraging methods and techniques.
 a. A teacher b. As a teacher c. Are a teacher d. With a teacher
33. The man _____ was arrested last night.
 a. to live next door b. he lives next door c. living next door d. lives next door
34. Our country will have _____ space shuttle to _____ moon _____ next month.
 a. a / the / the b. a / the / Ø c. the / Ø / the d. Ø / the / a
35. Who is _____ first spaceman to travel into _____ space?
 a. the / Ø b. the / the c. a / a d. a / the
36. I have just bought _____ HP printer, which is better than _____ one my mother gave me.
 a. Ø / the b. the / an c. an / the d. a / Ø
37. Only after they had completed the analysis to that degree _____ how to apply technology to the needs of our enterprise.
 a. did they ask to begin b. did they begin to ask
 c. they did begin to ask d. to ask did they begin

38. Do you know the man sitting at the _____?
 a. ugly wooden office desk b. wooden office ugly desk
 c. ugly office wooden desk d. office ugly wooden desk
39. The archaeologists were astonished to find such ____ at that particular site.
 a. an incredibly rare beautiful artifact b. a rare incredibly beautiful artifact
 c. a beautiful artifact incredibly rare d. an incredibly beautiful rare artifact
40. They kindly invited _____ sister and _____ to the party.
 a. I / me b. my / me c. myself / I d. mine / my
41. _____ a big garden, but we do all the gardening by _____.
 a. Itself / our b. It's / ourselves c. It / we d. Its / us
42. Where are my glasses? _____ disappeared.
 a. They have b. It has c. She has d. I have
43. The cost _____ by Peter before the end of the day.
 a. has calculated b. has been calculating
 c. will have been calculated d. will have been calculating
44. _____ yet?
 a. The building has been painted b. Was the building been painted
 c. Has the building painted d. Has the building been painted
45. The polluted rivers _____.
 a. cannot clean up b. cannot cleaned up
 c. cannot be cleaned up d. cannot cleaning up
46. _____ that she liked curry, he would have brought her to an Indian restaurant.
 a. If had John known b. Had John known
 c. John had known d. If had known John
47. _____ any attention to his agent's advice.
 a. Did the artist pay rarely b. Rarely the artist paid
 c. Rarely did the artist pay d. Did the artist rarely pay
48. _____ responsible for customers' lost property.
 a. Can the shop in no way be held b. Can the shop in any way be held
 c. In no way the shop can be held d. In no way can the shop be held
49. Yesterday grandmother asked me _____.
 a. if where her glasses were b. where her glasses were
 c. if where were her glasses d. where were her glasses
50. Andrew _____ lunch with Sue.
 a. said to me if Mandy would have b. asked would Mandy have
 c. asked me if Mandy would have d. asked if would Mandy have
51. Susan _____ that she _____ the Volunteer Program for three times.
 a. told / participates b. said / participated
 c. asked me / has participated d. told me / had participated
52. At last the _____ is showing signs of _____.
 a. economical / recover b. economics / recovery
 c. economy / recovery d. economic / recover
53. Many women have to suffer _____ because of poisonous _____.
 a. children / chemistry b. childhood / chemist
 c. childless / chemical d. childlessness / chemicals

54. Admitting you have made a mistake is a sign of _____, not _____.
- a. strong / weakly b. strength / weakness
c. strengthen / weak d. strongly / weakened
55. _____ is unknown.
- a. They are going where b. Are they going where
c. Where are they going d. Where they are going
56. _____ is important.
- a. Whether is or not a computer light-weighted
b. Whether a computer is light-weighted or not
c. A computer is light-weighted
d. Whether is a computer light-weighted
57. _____ pay for it.
- a. However broke the vase will have to b. Will whoever break the vase have to
c. Whoever broke the vase will have to d. Who did the vase break will have to
58. "I won't do this work under any circumstances," the worker said.
- a. The worker promise to do that work. b. The worker advised me to do that work.
c. The worker agreed to do that work. d. The worker refused to do that work.
59. What a terrific piece of music it was!
- a. How terrific that piece of music was! b. The music was too bad to enjoy!
c. We did not enjoy that piece of music. d. No one liked that piece of music.
60. It was such an interesting book that I read it through during the night.
- a. So interesting was the book that I read it through during the night.
b. Though I read the book through during the night, I did not find it interesting.
c. It was a waste of time reading the book through during the night.
d. I found the book interesting but I could not complete it during the night.
61. It was a very cold winter _____ he was born.
- a. in that b. in which c. where d. in when
62. The document _____ has a brown cover.
- a. that I need b. whom I need c. I need which d. for that I need
63. That's the hotel _____ for the first time.
- a. we met b. when we met c. where we met d. which we met
64. Close all the windows _____ you go out.
- a. before b. after c. while d. till
65. Please don't smoke _____.
- a. when you will be working b. while you are working
c. as long as the time you are working d. by the time you are working
66. We take a hike _____ our farm.
- a. soon before he visits b. not until he visits
c. every time he visits d. till he visits
67. He has to go _____.
- a. whoever his job takes him b. wherever his job takes him
c. however his job takes him d. whatever his job takes him
68. Life seems to be _____.
- a. more and as difficult b. more and more difficult
c. as and more difficult d. as and less difficult

69. My husband and I aren't _____ age.
 a. the same b. as old as c. the same as d. as
70. Modern people have _____ education than their ancients.
 a. most b. much c. more d. the more
71. What is _____ ocean in the world?
 a. largest b. the larger c. more larger d. the largest
72. If he had not stepped on the mine, _____.
 a. otherwise it would not have exploded b. it would not have exploded
 c. it will not have exploded d. or it would not explode
73. If he _____ too much last night, he _____ now.
 a. did not drunk / will not feel ill b. was not drinking / does not feel ill
 c. had not drunk / would not feel ill d. had not drunk / would not have felt ill
74. She would tell us the truth _____.
 a. if she knows it b. if she knew it
 c. unless she knows it d. unless she had known it
75. _____ something wrong, _____ please.
 a. If there is / keep calm b. In case / to keep
 c. Unless there were / you would keep calm d. Provided there was / keeping calm
76. Whaling continues in some countries _____.
 a. even though the efforts of many organisations to stop it
 b. despite the efforts of many organisations to stop it
 c. in spite of the efforts of many organisations are made to stop it
 d. in spite of the fact that the efforts of many organisations to stop it
77. _____ they are often disheartened, they are now beginning to see some positive results.
 a. Even though b. As though c. Despite d. In spite of
78. _____ natural resources are known to be limited, they are not being used economically.
 a. As if b. If c. Even if d. Despite
79. She looked _____ some bad news.
 a. as if she had had b. as if she has c. as she had had d. as though she has
80. They stared at me _____ crazy.
 a. if I were b. as though I am
 c. as though I had been d. as I were
81. The city center is still exact _____ it was when it was built thirty years ago.
 a. like b. as c. as if d. as though
82. The contestant was _____ she could not answer the question thoroughly.
 a. so nervous that b. such nervous that c. very nervous that d. too nervous that
83. She looked at him in _____ he had to look away.
 a. such distress that b. so distress that
 c. distress such that d. distress so that
84. _____ no one objected to her proposal.
 a. She talked such convincingly that b. Did she talk so convincingly that
 c. Such convincingly did she talk that d. So convincingly did she talk that
85. They closed the door _____ no one could hear what they were talking about.
 a. so that b. in order to c. so as to d. such that

86. A backpack is a bag with straps that go over your shoulders _____ things on your back while you are walking.
- a. so you can carry that b. such that you can carry
c. so that you can carry d. so that can you carry
87. I agreed to her suggestion _____.
- a. so as did not upset her b. so that not to upset her
c. in order to not upset her d. in order not to upset her
88. _____, he went to see his tutor to ask for advice.
- a. Because of the fact that his problems with mathematics
b. Due to the fact that his problems with mathematics
c. Because he was having problems with mathematics
d. Because of he was having problems with mathematics
89. Mark joined the English Drama Club _____ he wanted to improve his intonation.
- a. since b. because of c. due to d. thanks to
90. He works a lot of overtime _____ his rent is so expensive.
- a. due to b. because of c. for d. because.

Error Identification

91. Over the past 60 years, starting right after World War II, American society
A B
became richer.
C D
92. In many places in the world, social or religious restrictions which prevent
A B C
women from travelling freely.
D
93. It estimates that women represent more than half of the labor required to
A B
produce the food consumed in developing countries.
C D
94. The more languages we learn, the most we get into the knowledge treasure
A B C D
of humanity.
95. The trouble in communication between nations are not distance, different
A
habits and customs, or national interests, but it is the trouble of language.
B C D
96. The United States uses many of energy - nearly a million dollars worth
A B C D
each minute.
97. If you have some sufficient knowledge of English you can make yourself
A B
understand almost everywhere.
C D
98. If students can get a job in their area of study, they will gain valuable
A B C
experience and putting their knowledge to use immediately.
D

99. Advertising not only leads us to buy things that we do not need or cannot afford and confuses our sense of reality.
 A B
 C D
100. Commercials on TV and ads in newspapers and magazines influence us many more than we think they do.
 A B C
 D

PRACTICE TEST 5

Choose a, b, c, or d that is the best alternative.

1. Be careful with that knife or _____ will cut _____!
 a. yourself / you b. yours / your c. your / yours d. you / yourself
2. There's no point _____ a new car this year.
 a. to buy b. buying c. buy d. in buying
3. I never get an hour to _____.
 a. I b. my c. myself d. me
4. You look tired. You _____ have some sleep.
 a. shall b. might c. will d. should
5. Mary _____ come to help us, but nobody is sure.
 a. should b. might c. can d. shall
6. _____ you like anything to drink? – No, thanks.
 a. Would b. Should c. Needn't d. Might
7. I am sorry _____ what happened _____ you yesterday.
 a. at / for b. on / to c. about / to d. with / on
8. Peter is not accustomed _____ speaking _____ public.
 a. to / in b. from / on c. for / at d. with / about
9. Most people think _____ computers _____ very modern inventions.
 a. about / up b. for / on c. on / with d. of / as
10. Her new book is supposed _____ very good.
 a. is b. be c. to be d. being
11. There is nothing worth _____ in this newspaper.
 a. read b. to read c. reading d. for reading
12. She kept _____ herself that nothing was wrong.
 a. tell b. to tell c. told d. telling
13. She began cleaning the wound with _____.
 a. a piece of cloth b. a piece of cloths c. a bar of cloth d. a bar of cloths
14. Our current assignment requires _____ reading.
 a. many b. a few of c. quite a bit of d. too many of
15. _____ are marching along the streets.
 a. Thousand of people b. Thousands of people
 c. Thousand of peoples d. Thousands people
16. She _____ English very well although she _____ to England.
 a. speaks / has never been b. has spoken / was never
 c. has spoken / is never d. will speak / had never been

17. We can go out now. It _____ any more.
 a. did not rained b. will not rain c. has not rained d. is not raining
18. _____ pregnant for 5 months next week?
 a. Is she b. Has she been c. Had she been d. Will she have been
19. Their grandfather seemed to be bally ill, so they immediately ____ the doctor.
 a. called off b. sent for c. put through d. give up
20. The country's worsening reputation does not seem to be _____ the tourists.
 a. taking down b. spending out c. speeding up d. putting off
21. He took his time _____ a cigarette, and smoked leisurely.
 a. picking on b. taking in c. lighting up d. making for
22. The moon will rise _____ the sun sets.
 a. before b. as soon as c. until d. for
23. _____ he left, he made sure he had his keys with him.
 a. As though b. If only c. Before d. Unless
24. _____ I told the truth, you would not believe me.
 a. As b. But c. Since d. Even if
25. _____ the weather like?
 a. What is b. How does c. Which are d. When do
26. How much does that computer cost? - _____.
 a. It takes three days b. \$1,000
 c. Three days ago d. Twice a week
27. Peter caught a taxi, _____?
 a. doesn't he b. did he c. didn't he d. isn't he
28. Three-quarters of the teachers _____ against omitting university entrance exams.
 a. is b. has been c. have been d. was
29. Rickets _____ a disease that children can get when their food does not contain enough Vitamin D.
 a. is b. are c. were d. are thought to be
30. Furniture _____ of large objects such as tables, chairs, or beds.
 a. consist b. consists c. were consisted d. are consisted
31. _____ lived in the United States.
 a. Peter and Mary grandfather b. Peter's and Mary grandfather
 c. Peter's and Mary's grandfather d. Peter and Mary's grandfather
32. Someone is waiting for you at the _____.
 a. front door b. front's door c. door front d. front of door
33. This _____ was built in 1937.
 a. first cinema town's b. town of first cinema
 c. town's first cinema d. town first cinema
34. _____ seems to be to enjoy himself.
 a. That was his only purpose in life b. With his only purpose in life
 c. It was his only purpose in life d. His only purpose in life
35. Do you know the man _____?
 a. to be in a dark suit over there b. who in a dark suit over there
 c. he was in a dark suit over there d. in a dark suit over there

50. "_____" Daisy made a suggestion.
 a. I really don't like to go fishing. b. I think going fishing is interesting.
 c. How about going fishing this afternoon? d. Do you like to go fishing?
51. "If I were you, I would learn how to use a computer", Peter _____.
 a. advised me b. refused my proposal
 c. disagreed with me d. promised to help me
52. A new manager was appointed during her _____.
 a. absent b. absence c. absently d. absentee
53. I am really _____ to make a _____ in my study.
 a. sure / success b. surely / succeed
 c. ensure / successful d. sure / successfully
54. At last he managed to complete his work _____.
 a. confide b. confident c. confidently d. confidence
55. _____ changed his life forever.
 a. That Tom did b. What did Tom do c. What Tom did d. Who Tom did
56. _____ is important to her future.
 a. If she passes b. Whether does she pass or not
 c. Whether she pass or not d. Whether she passes or not
57. Do you know _____?
 a. who's house that is b. whose house is that
 c. whose house that is d. whose house is
58. "It is you that stole my purse," Mrs. Pike said to the young man.
 a. Mrs. Pike told the young man that it was you that stole her purse.
 b. Mrs. Pike denied the young man of stealing her purse.
 c. Mrs. Pike accused the young man of stealing her purse.
 d. Mrs. Pike asked the young man to steal her purse.
59. Neither John nor I join you
 a. I, along with John, join you
 b. Both of us, John and I, join you.
 c. John, as well as I, joins you.
 d. John does not join you, and I do not, either.
60. How can you stand such a talkative girl?
 a. How can you get on with such a talkative girl?
 b. How can you put up with such a talkative girl?
 c. How can you get rid of such a talkative girl?
 d. How can you keep pace with such a talkative girl?
61. _____ the bank robbers escaped was white.
 a. The car b. The car in which c. The car in that d. The car which
62. The woman _____ son was crying tried to calm him.
 a. who b. whom c. whose d. that
63. The villagers had found the men and their car _____ were buried in the snow.
 a. who b. which c. that d. whom
64. _____, we have fun.
 a. No sooner had we got together b. Any time we get together
 c. Not until we get together d. Soon after we will get together

94. One step beyond automated machines is the industrial robot, the heart and
 A B
 brain of that is the microcomputer.
 C D
95. Experts in psychology believe that for many people money is an importance
 A B C
 symbol of strength and influence.
 D
96. In recent years, there have been great increases in a number of engineers
 A B C D
 and scientists employed in American industries.
97. Although Yuri Gagarin first space flight lasted only 108 minutes, it gave
 A B C
encouragement to those who were interested in the future of manned space flight.
 D
98. Electronic computers are wonderful proof of how clever people are at work
 A B C D
 out ways of helping themselves.
99. Physical fitness does not guarantee good health, but they provide a big step
 A B C
 toward living a long and healthy life.
 D
100. Nylon, a synthetic, make from a combination of water and a by-product of
 A B C
 coal, was first introduced in 1938.
 D

PRACTICE TEST 6

Choose a, b, c, or d that is the best alternative.

1. Which car is _____?
 a. she b. her c. hers d. herself
2. If you see Kevin give _____ love.
 a. him / my b. his / I c. himself / mine d. his / me
3. I caught sight of _____ in the mirror.
 a. I b. me c. mine d. myself
4. Tina's cake was not delicious. She _____ the recipe very well.
 a. may have followed b. should not have followed
 c. couldn't have followed d. can have followed
5. I do not know why this room is always so dirty. It _____ every morning.
 a. must be cleaning b. needn't be cleaned
 c. should be cleaned d. must clean
6. That is a secret. You _____ tell anybody.
 a. could not b. can c. should d. mustn't
7. _____? – The blue one.
 a. How much is your car b. Is your car blue
 c. Where is your car d. Which car is yours

8. _____ Peter generous or not?
 a. Does b. Did c. Has d. Is
9. _____ at that apartment? - Mr. Pike does.
 a. Whom lives b. Whom does lives c. Who lives d. Who does he live
10. Preserving natural resources is _____ great importance.
 a. of b. in c. for d. at
11. His illness prevented him _____ completing his work _____ time.
 a. over / before b. from / on c. on / in d. with / at
12. Although we tried to persuade them, they did not approve _____ our suggestions.
 a. for b. in c. up d. of
13. My boss let me _____ the afternoon off _____ to my sister's wedding.
 a. have / to go b. having / go c. to have / for going d. had / gone
14. I regret _____ that we will not be able to give you a contract.
 a. inform b. to inform c. informing d. informed
15. David's car would not start. He tried _____ gasoline directly into the carburetor but it still would not work.
 a. pour b. to pour c. poured d. pouring
16. _____ is put off due to the fact that the president has had ill health.
 a. The tomorrow of conference b. The conference of tomorrow
 c. Tomorrow conference d. Tomorrow's conference
17. The police are investigating _____.
 a. the teacher's necklace of the loss b. the loss of the teacher necklace
 c. the teacher's necklace loss d. the loss of the teacher's necklace
18. Some grammatical rules have been simplified in _____.
 a. today English b. today's English c. English today's d. English today
19. The students in the classroom _____ late several times this week.
 a. come b. have come c. are coming d. will be coming
20. I _____ to the United States tonight. I _____ you a ring when I _____.
 a. am flying / will give / arrive b. fly / would give / have arrived
 c. am going to fly / could give / arrived d. will fly / have given / will arrive
21. They _____ and _____ a lot of money before they _____ last year.
 a. are working / saving / will retire b. have worked / have saved / would retire
 c. were working / saved / have retired d. had worked / saved / retired
22. _____ harmful to our health.
 a. Smoke is b. Smoke are c. Smokes are d. Smokes is
23. _____ day is important.
 a. Any b. Some c. Every d. All
24. He has _____ of computer science.
 a. little knowledges b. a few knowledge c. little knowledge d. many knowledge
25. The student _____ the calculations twice, but he could not find the mistake.
 a. went over b. took in c. brought about d. looked up
26. She had to _____ her job because she could not find a babysitter to _____ her children.
 a. give up / look after b. look forward to / take up
 c. make out / do up d. put through / set aside

27. The firemen managed to _____ the fire quickly; however the house was _____.
- a. make up / waved in b. kick in / made off
c. put out / burnt down d. take in / lit up
28. Please convey my best wishes to your mother _____ you see her.
- a. since b. while c. as d. and
29. Have you met Peter _____ heard anything from him?
- a. or b. and c. but d. as
30. We recognized her at once _____ we had not seen her for years.
- a. though b. as c. and d. so that
31. The news of the discovery _____.
- a. have spread b. spread c. is spreading d. are spreading
32. Rice and beans, my favorite dish, _____ me of my native Puerto Rico.
- a. which remind b. have reminded c. remind d. reminds
33. Either the physicians in this hospital or the chief administrator _____ make a decision.
- a. are having to b. are going to have to
c. have to d. is going to have to
34. The policeman accused Tom _____.
- a. a thief b. to be a thief c. of a thief d. of being a thief
35. John wrote about his native village _____.
- a. having pleasure b. as pleasure c. great pleasure d. with great pleasure
36. _____, he has looked for a job.
- a. Expelling from school last month b. After expelling from school last month
c. Expelled from school last month d. Was expelled from school last month
37. It is great to learn _____ English on _____ Internet
- a. \emptyset / the b. the / an c. an / the d. \emptyset / \emptyset
38. She told Peter she had no _____ knowledge of _____ computer science.
- a. a / the b. the / the c. an / \emptyset d. \emptyset / the
39. John goes to _____ school by _____ bus every day.
- a. the / a b. a / the c. an / the d. \emptyset / \emptyset
40. Peter has just bought _____.
- a. a small reading round lamp b. a small round reading lamp
c. a reading small round lamp d. a reading lamp small round
41. She has worked _____.
- a. for a very long time here b. a very long time for here
c. here for a very long time d. for here a very long time
42. The robbers escaped on _____.
- a. a huge wooden sailing ship b. a wooden sailing huge ship
c. a huge sailing wooden ship d. a sailing huge wooden ship
43. Lots of houses in the village _____ by the earthquake.
- a. were destroyed b. was destroyed c. destroys d. are destroying
44. It _____ that about ten million children _____ with the virus by the end of the decade.
- a. estimates / will be infected b. is estimated / will have been infected
c. was estimated / are going to infect d. has estimated / are being infected

45. After the storm, everything possible _____ to get things back to normal.
 a. has been doing b. has done c. is doing d. is being done
46. Under no circumstances _____ animals.
 a. accept can the bus b. can accept the bus
 c. the can bus accept d. can the bus accept
47. _____ hard physical work as we did before.
 a. Any longer we do not do b. No more we do
 c. No longer do we do d. No longer we do
48. _____, he could not make ends meet.
 a. However hard he worked b. However did hard he work
 c. However hard did he work d. Did he work however hard
49. I think going to market in New Year season is great _____.
 a. excite b. excited c. exciting d. excitement
50. Crop rotation can help to prevent soil _____.
 a. exhaust b. exhausted c. exhausting d. exhaustion
51. _____, we can earn enough to afford all basic _____ of life.
 a. Fortunate / necessary b. Fortunately / necessities
 c. Unfortunately / necessarily d. Unfortunate / necessitate
52. This is _____.
 a. had what happened b. what happened
 c. what did happened d. has what happened
53. _____ doesn't surprise me at all.
 a. When was she married a wealthy person
 b. If was she married a wealthy person
 c. She married a wealthy person
 d. That she married a wealthy person
54. _____ me so disappointed.
 a. What he told me made b. What did he tell me made
 c. He told me made d. How did he tell me made
55. This is my first performance in Canada.
 a. Firstly, I will perform in Canada.
 b. I am used to performing in Canada.
 c. I have never performed in Canada before.
 d. One of my performances is in Canada.
56. During your absence we were doing very little work.
 a. Your absence made us do a lot of work.
 b. Because of your absence, we had too much work to do.
 c. Very little were we working while you were away.
 d. You were absent from work very little.
57. He lost due to a sharp pain in his foot.
 a. A sharp pain in his foot could not prevent him from winning.
 b. Even though he had a sharp pain in his foot, he managed to win.
 c. Without a sharp pain in his foot, he would not have lost.
 d. His loss had no relation to a sharp pain in his foot.

58. John _____.
- a. said to me not to stay up late b. told me not to stay up late
c. told me do not stay up late d. said did not stay up late
59. Mary said that her boss _____ to London _____.
- a. will go / tomorrow b. went / tomorrow
c. would go / the next day d. had gone / the next day
60. The girl asked him _____.
- a. that he lives near here b. whether did he live near there
c. that did he live near there d. if he lived near there
61. She wanted to buy a house _____ in the suburbs.
- a. which was located b. was located
c. which it was located d. whose was located
62. _____ is a famous artist, came to London in 1997.
- a. Peter Hanson b. Peter Hanson, that
c. Peter Hanson who d. Peter Hanson, who
63. That is the man _____ dog destroyed our yard.
- a. that b. who c. whom d. whose
64. Please wait _____ I am making a phone call.
- a. as soon as b. until c. while d. during
65. He will let us know _____.
- a. as soon as he arrives b. as he will arrive
c. till he is arriving d. up to his arrival
66. _____, everything had been ready.
- a. Until the boss came b. Before the boss came
c. When the boss would come d. No sooner the boss came
67. _____, there are always going to be disadvantages.
- a. You choose to live b. Wherever you choose to live
c. When you choose to live d. So you choose to live
68. The second half of the play was _____ interesting _____ the first one.
- a. less / as b. less / than c. little / as d. the least / than
69. What is _____ distance you have ever run?
- a. more far b. the farrest c. the farthest d. more far
70. This wine is _____ the others.
- a. as sweeter than b. more sweeter than
c. a fewer sweet than d. a bit sweeter than
71. _____ I think about my exam, _____ happy I feel.
- a. The more / the less b. The much / the little
c. The most / the least d. Most / least
72. _____ that problem with the car, we wouldn't have missed the speech.
- a. If we had had b. If had we had
c. Unless we had had d. Provided that we had had
73. If I _____ a little taller, I _____ be able to water the plant on the top shelf.
- a. was / did b. were / would c. am / had d. had been / would have
74. Tom's company will almost certainly sack him _____ he improves his attitude
- a. unless b. or c. otherwise d. if

89. I think they may not come _____ they have not replied to the invitation.
 a. due to b. because c. because of d. for
90. Those workers are facing unemployment _____ the financial difficulty that the company has met.
 a. as b. since c. because d. because of

Error Identification

91. Sports competitions can be harmful to the athletes who injure themselves because of they exceed the physical tolerances of their bodies.
 A B
 C D
92. Present discoveries and inventions will surely be the found for many other discoveries and inventions in the future.
 A B C
 D
93. Although the improvement in literacy has been steady and persistence, there are still many illiterates in rural areas.
 A B C
 D
94. While the campaign, young volunteers helped build bridges, roads and one hundred houses for disadvantaged families.
 A B
 C D
95. She decided remaining celibate and to devote her life to help the homeless and orphans.
 A B C D
96. If your friend tells you something in confidence, keeping it secret and never tell about it to anyone else.
 A B C
 D
97. In 1977 Amnesty was awarded the Nobel Peace Prize for "defending human worth against degrading treatment, violent and torture".
 A B C
 D
98. Because China is overpopulated, its government considers the one-children policy as the best way to solve the problem.
 A B
 C D
99. The world's nonrenewable fossil fuels and others mineral deposits that took millions of years to form are now being destroyed in decades.
 A B C
 D
100. Each year, natural forest cover is lose to such activities as illegal cutting and forest fires.
 A B C D

PRACTICE TEST 7

Choose a, b, c, or d that is the best alternative.

1. The customers _____ the company before our boss _____.
a. was leaving / arrive b. already left / have arrived
c. has been left / were arriving d. had left / arrived
2. When the police _____ to the scene of the accident, both drivers _____ away.
a. will get / go b. get / will go c. got / had gone d. has got / went
3. She is so annoying. She _____ her dirty dishes in the sink.
a. always leaves b. will always leave
c. will be always leaving d. had always left
4. The last bus is at eleven. I _____ miss it or else I _____ be able to get home.
a. had better / will b. ought not to / needn't
c. may / would d. mustn't / won't
5. You _____ pay me back that money you owe me soon, or else!
a. had better b. would c. would prefer d. should not
6. "I _____ help you," John promised.
a. will b. would c. may d. could
7. She imagined herself _____ in her favorite armchair at home.
a. sit b. to sit c. sitting d. sat
8. She objected _____ children corporally.
a. to punishing b. to punish c. punishing d. punish
9. Sometimes we are made _____ things that we do not want to do.
a. do b. to do c. doing d. done
10. He kept reading _____ he fell asleep.
a. when b. while c. until d. since
11. We must hurry _____ we will be late.
a. or else b. and c. but d. because
12. _____ you need me, I'll be at Tom's.
a. In case b. But c. And d. By the time
13. Some of the grain _____ to be contaminated.
a. appear b. appears c. have appeared d. are appearing
14. There _____ a book, two notebooks, and some pens on John's table.
a. are b. were c. have been d. is
15. Each cat and each dog _____ its own toy.
a. have b. has c. have got d. is having
16. _____ have trouble with English pronunciation.
a. Quite students b. Quite many students
c. Quite a few students d. A little of students
17. He has _____ of passing his exams.
a. any hopes b. a few hope c. a little hopes d. little hope
18. He knows _____ people in the class, so he feels lonely.
a. few b. a little c. a few d. every
19. I am late, _____?
a. am I b. am not I c. aren't I d. don't I

20. _____ us?
 a. Will you join b. You will join c. Do you will join d. Have you join
21. _____ do you come to visit your grandparents? - Twice a month.
 a. How b. How often c. How long d. How about
22. _____ is by the sea.
 a. The Smith villa b. The Smith's villa c. The Smiths villa d. The Smiths' villa
23. _____ was a complete failure.
 a. Last night performance b. Last night's performance
 c. Last night of performance d. Performance's last night
24. He has worked as a _____ for a museum since last year.
 a. door's man b. man of door c. doorman d. man's door
25. "What a beautiful dress you have!" Mary said to me.
 a. Mary made a compliment on my beautiful dress.
 b. Mary suggested that I should have that beautiful dress.
 c. Mary advised me to wear that beautiful dress.
 d. Mary objected to wearing that beautiful dress.
26. If only I were at home now.
 a. I wish I were at home now. b. I do not want to be at home now.
 c. I would rather not be at home now. d. I am at home now.
27. He was too anxious to do anything.
 a. His anxiety didn't have effects on him.
 b. He did everything although he was very anxious.
 c. He was so anxious that he could not do anything.
 d. Everything was done thanks to his anxiety.
28. Many of _____ disagree with the changes that are happening.
 a. we b. our c. us, d. ours
29. Did you want to talk to the chairman _____, or could _____ personal assistant help you?
 a. himself / his b. he / his c. him / he d. his / himself
30. Measles is a misery to children. _____ dangerous.
 a. They are b. It is c. There are d. Its
31. What did you do at ____ Christmas? - I stayed at ____ home and watched ____ TV.
 a. the / ø / the b. ø / the / the c. ø / ø / ø d. the / the / ø
32. He was _____ honest, hard-working lawyer but he hated _____ job.
 a. a / ø b. an / the c. the / a d. ø / the
33. _____ Pacific Ocean is _____ largest body of water on Earth.
 a. The / ø b. ø / the c. The / the d. ø / ø
34. The house _____ has just been sold.
 a. to paint pink b. pink painting c. painting pink d. painted pink
35. _____, she decided to quit the job.
 a. Feeling dissatisfied b. Felt dissatisfied
 c. She feeling dissatisfied d. To be felt dissatisfied
36. My roommate, _____, has never been to Navy Pier before.
 a. as a freshman from Geneva b. that a freshman from Geneva
 c. is a freshman from Geneva d. a freshman from Geneva

37. _____ the early train tomorrow.
 a. I will not take probably
 c. Probably will not I take
 b. I probably will not take
 d. I will take not probably
38. I _____ to turn off the lights.
 a. have to remind always her
 c. always have to remind her
 b. have to always remind her
 d. have always to remind her
39. For thousands of children every year, measles is _____.
 a. a very serious illness
 c. an illness very serious
 b. a serious very illness
 d. a very illness serious
40. Peter has just inherited a large sum of money _____ his uncle.
 a. from
 b. for
 c. as
 d. off
41. Babbage was born _____ 1791 and brought _____ to be a brilliant mathematician.
 a. about / in
 b. on / for
 c. over / with
 d. in / up
42. Unfortunately, there was not enough demand _____ our product.
 a. for
 b. of
 c. to
 d. at
43. The mention of price increase in petrol sent citizens out to the fill stations to _____ as much as they could.
 a. buy up
 b. sell for
 c. pay out
 d. stay away
44. Ben had planned a steak dinner for himself after _____ on her plane.
 a. seeing Jackie off
 c. running Jackie back
 b. sending Jackie out
 d. following Jackie for
45. The firemen succeeded in _____ because they acted promptly.
 a. putting the fire out
 c. sending the fire for
 b. sharing the fire with
 d. making the fire up
46. Have you ever seen any photographs _____ from great distances in outer space?
 a. which took
 b. took
 c. taking
 d. taken
47. Natural resources _____.
 a. are believed never to use up
 c. are believing to be used never up
 b. believed never used up
 d. are believed never to be used up
48. Millions of dollars' worth of damage _____.
 a. has caused with a storm
 c. has been causing by a storm
 b. has been caused by a storm
 d. has been caused with a storm
49. Only after a twelve-hour delay, _____.
 a. their plane did take off
 c. did their plane take off
 b. their plane took off
 d. their plane take off
50. _____ late _____ his books home.
 a. Not only Tony was / but he had also left
 b. Not only was Tony / but he had also left
 c. Tony was not only / but had he also left
 d. Was Tony not only / but also had he left
51. _____ from your seminars.
 a. Should you be absent on no account
 c. On no account you should be absent
 b. Should you be absent on any account
 d. On no account should you be absent

52. " _____?" John's brother advised him.
 a. Why don't you try again b. Why do you try again
 c. Why did you try again d. Why must you try again
53. Mary asked me _____ he would come the next day or not.
 a. if b. unless c. that d. when
54. Ronald asked me _____.
 a. where Maria parked her car b. where did Maria park her car
 c. where Maria parks her car d. where does Maria park her car
55. Work on the _____ line is monotonous and lacks _____.
 a. production / variety b. product / various
 c. produce / varied d. productivity / vary
56. Fitting into a different _____ is not _____.
 a. culturist / easer b. cultural / ease c. culturally / easily d. culture / easy
57. We all admire Michael Faraday for his _____ story.
 a. succeed b. success c. successful d. successfully
58. Dorothy Punch taught us _____ our listening and pronunciation skills.
 a. how improve b. how we could improve
 c. how improving d. how can we improve
59. Do you know _____?
 a. where we will be taking the test b. will where we be taking the test
 c. will we be taking the test where d. where will we be taking the test
60. _____ is unbelievable.
 a. All movies will be available b. That all movies will be available
 c. As all movies will be available d. That all movies which will be available
61. It is earth's gravity _____ people their weight.
 a. that gives b. which to give c. gives d. whose gives
62. _____ Bren comes from, has a lot of good curry restaurants.
 a. Bradford, b. Bradford, where c. Bradford, that d. Bradford where
63. The book _____ I borrowed from the library yesterday has lost some pages.
 a. whom b. whose c. from which d. which
64. Someone stole my purse _____ for the bus.
 a. as soon as I am waiting b. since I was waiting
 c. while I was waiting d. when I will wait
65. _____ a joke, everybody roared with laughter.
 a. When he is telling b. In case he told
 c. Telling d. Every time he told
66. _____ it rains, I prefer staying in bed and reading magazines.
 a. Whenever b. As soon as c. Until d. Till
67. Put the sign _____.
 a. in where everyone can read it b. where can everyone read it
 c. what everyone can read it d. where everyone can read it
68. Many people think that playing football is _____.
 a. most interesting b. more than interesting
 c. the most interesting d. the more interesting

69. Mary is _____ than her husband.
 a. old b. older c. the older d. more older
70. We are both outgoing, but Mary does not talk _____ I do.
 a. as much b. much as c. as many as d. so much as
71. _____ cigarettes you smoke, _____ your health becomes.
 a. The more / the worse b. The many / The bad
 c. The most / the worst d. More / worse
72. If the demand increases, _____.
 a. prices will rise b. prices would rise
 c. so prices will rise d. and prices rises
73. What time would we get there _____ a taxi?
 a. we took b. if we take
 c. unless we take d. provided that we took
74. _____, I would not have completed my overseas study.
 a. My parents supported me b. Due to my parents' support
 c. Without my parents' support d. If my parents supported me
75. _____ a sudden storm, the climbers would not have died.
 a. Unless there had been b. Provided that it were
 c. Supposed d. If there were not
76. I need to buy a new coat soon _____ the weather is getting cold.
 a. because b. because of c. due to d. for
77. Because _____, I decided to go for a walk.
 a. it was such a beautiful day b. such a beautiful day
 c. of it was such a beautiful day d. of the day is beautiful
78. We all felt tired _____ the hot weather.
 a. because b. since c. as d. due to
79. _____ only four years old, Oliver can do long multiplication.
 a. Despite he is b. In spite of he is c. Despite d. In spite
80. _____ I sympathize with your difficulties, there is little I can do to help you.
 a. As though b. Even though c. Though of d. Despite
81. I will ask the boss for a rise _____.
 a. as though losing my job b. even if losing my job
 c. although I may lose my job d. in spite of I may lose my job
82. The problem is not really complicated _____.
 a. as I have ever thought b. as though I think
 c. as if I thought d. as though I will think
83. Mary has little knowledge of computer, but she often pretends _____ a programmer.
 a. if only she is b. if only she were c. as if she were d. as though she is
84. She has never gone abroad, but she talks about some foreign countries _____ she had been there for a long time.
 a. as if b. if only c. even if d. if
85. She fills her car up _____ that she will not run out of gas during her trip.
 a. in order to make sure b. so as she can make sure
 c. so that making sure d. in order she can make sure

99. It is reported that about 7 billion dollars is spent each year to treat the diseases related to be overweight.
 A B C D
100. Nowadays, industry turns out more products at greater speed and with least labor to meet the demands of the rapidly increasing population.
 A B C D

PRACTICE TEST 8

Choose a, b, c, or d that is the best alternative.

1. The idea for redecorating the house came to my mind _____ to work last week.
 a. as I drive b. when was driving c. when driving d. as I was driving
2. What do you think our friends _____ when we _____ to the party?
 a. will be doing / get b. are doing / will get
 c. have done / will be getting d. had done / got
3. _____ me to the airport, please? My car _____.
 a. Are you going to take / broke b. Are you taking / breaks
 c. Do you take / has broken d. Will you take / has been broken
4. The article stated that he _____ read at the age of three.
 a. can b. could c. would d. might
5. You _____ take a sweater in case it gets cold.
 a. should b. needn't c. mustn't d. would
6. Be careful! Such small objects _____, causing serious injury or even death.
 a. needn't swallow b. must be swallowing
 c. must swallow d. could be swallowed
7. It is obvious he is only interested _____ money.
 a. to make b. in make c. to making d. in making
8. Anne couldn't find a taxi so I offered _____ her to the station.
 a. drive b. to drive c. driving d. driven
9. Let me _____ you some reasonable explanation.
 a. give b. to give c. giving d. gave
10. I sat down _____ drank my coffee.
 a. and b. but c. so d. therefore
11. Tina wanted to go home, _____ Dave did not.
 a. so b. and c. but d. because
12. The police had searched thoroughly, _____ found nothing.
 a. therefore b. so c. and d. yet
13. Each of them _____ a good seat.
 a. have chosen b. are chosen c. was choosing d. choose
14. All of the dogs in the neighborhood _____.
 a. barks b. was barking c. were barking d. has barked
15. Statistics _____ a difficult subject.
 a. is b. are c. were d. was be

16. Jack has _____ friends in Los Angeles.
 a. lots b. a lot c. a lot of d. lot of
17. There is _____ available at the library.
 a. plenty of help b. many helps c. so many helps d. a few help
18. There is _____ to waste.
 a. a great deal of times b. few time
 c. a little times d. little time
19. _____ the matter with you?
 a. What is d. How is c. What does d. How does
20. _____ you ever witnessed a fire?
 a. Do b. Are c. Have d. Does
21. Let's begin now, _____?
 a. shall we b. will you c. are they d. is it
22. Do you often go to church on _____?
 a. Christmas' Eve b. Christmas Eve c. Christmas's Eve d. Christmas of Eve
23. _____ has soared over the past 20 years.
 a. The world's economy b. The world economy
 c. The world of economy d. The economy world's
24. The city leaders have not chosen the _____ for a new university yet.
 a. building's site b. building site c. site of building d. building of site
25. "I regret not to take that work," Tom said.
 a. Tom promised not to take that work.
 b. Tom agreed to take that work.
 c. Tom refused to take that work.
 d. Tom said he regrets not to take that work.
26. Sam is not as strong as Peter.
 a. Both Sam and Peter are not strong. b. Neither Sam nor Peter is strong.
 c. Peter is stronger than Sam. d. Sam is the strongest.
27. Mary is not old enough to live on her own.
 a. Mary is old and lives independently.
 b. Mary is too old to live on her own.
 c. Mary is so young that she cannot live on her own.
 d. Mary lives on her own although she is young.
28. Several neighbors of _____ were at the party.
 a. we b. us c. ours d. our
29. She lost _____ key and locked _____ in the room.
 a. her / she b. her / herself c. hers / she d. herself / her
30. Anyone who drives _____ car at 100 miles an hour is asking for trouble.
 a. its b. our c. his d. hers
31. The lines at _____ cinema were very long, so I had to wait for _____ long time.
 a. the / a b. Ø / an c. the / Ø d. Ø / the
32. John was here _____ hour ago. Now, he has gone to Paris on _____ business.
 a. a / the b. an / Ø c. the / a d. an / the
33. Listen! Dennis is playing _____ trumpet.
 a. a b. an c. the d. Ø

34. _____, we had to complete the trip in two hours.
 a. To reach the airport on time b. Reach the airport on time
 c. As reaching the airport on time d. Reached the airport on time
35. That book, _____, is about science fiction.
 a. is publishing last year b. is published last year
 c. published last year d. publishing last year
36. John was _____.
 a. extremely rich indeed b. as extremely rich indeed
 c. for extremely rich indeed d. being extremely rich indeed
37. The River Reiner burst its banks _____.
 a. after the heavy rain yesterday b. the heavy rain after yesterday
 c. after yesterday the heavy rain d. after the heavy yesterday rain
38. John used to drive _____.
 a. an old German yellow car b. a German old yellow car
 c. an old yellow German car d. a yellow German old car
39. _____ is a tiring work.
 a. In the running summer, a marathon b. The summer running in a marathon
 c. Running a marathon in the summer d. A running marathon in the summer
40. The conference starts _____ 8 am. Please be _____ time.
 a. at / on b. in / off c. on / at d. for / in
41. Did you listen _____ the news _____ the radio last night?
 a. at / over b. to / on c. of / through d. for / in
42. He is addicted _____ the Internet, especially games online.
 a. about b. to c. from d. by
43. His test score _____. They were very disappointed.
 a. put his parents through b. let his parents down
 c. took his parents on d. showed his parents off
44. He _____ school because his family was in financial difficulty.
 a. sent through b. dropped out of c. brought about d. turned into
45. My sister has recently _____ yoga as a hobby.
 a. taken up b. made over c. put on d. kept out
46. _____ by Mr. Pike, my friend's father?
 a. Is the plane flying b. Is the plane being flown
 c. Is the plane be flown d. Is the plane be flying
47. More and more foreign investments _____ in our country.
 a. have carried out b. have been carried out
 c. carried out d. are carrying
48. Anyone who reaches the tape first _____ to be the winner.
 a. will declare b. will be declaring c. will be declared d. will have declared
49. _____ so depressed.
 a. Has he never felt b. Never he has felt
 c. Never has he felt d. Has he felt never
50. _____, I never seem to be able to finish off a whole pizza.
 a. However am I hungry b. However hungry am I
 c. However I am hungry d. However hungry I am

51. Hardly _____ home when _____ the message.
 a. I had reached / I remembered b. I had reached / did I remember
 c. had I reached / I remembered d. had I reached / did I remember
52. Betty wanted to know _____.
 a. where I went yesterday b. where did I go the day before
 c. where I had gone yesterday d. where I had gone the day before
53. She _____ to her birthday party the previous week.
 a. said why did not I come b. said why I did not come
 c. asked why had not I come d. asked why I had not come
54. " _____ " my friend urged me.
 a. Come on! Apply for the job, b. Shall I apply for the job?
 b. Would you mind applying for the job? d. I will apply for the job,
55. The doctor may want to give an extra _____ injection at the same time as the measles _____.
 a. protection / vaccine b. protective / vaccination
 c. protect / vaccinate d. protector / vaccine
56. Drugs are one of the _____ profession's most _____ tools.
 a. medicine / value b. medical / valuable
 c. medicate / valuably d. medicine / invaluable
57. A handshake should not be so _____ that it hurts the other person.
 a. strength b. strengthen c. strong d. strongly
58. He does not remember _____ at the accident.
 a. that happened b. what happened c. happened d. happened what
59. _____ is hire a tutor who can help them with their math skills.
 a. What do they b. What should they do
 c. They should do d. What they should do
60. _____ depends on _____ a computer or not.
 a. That you will get the job / whether you can use
 b. You will get the job / whether you can use
 c. That you will get the job / you can use
 d. You will get the job / you can use
61. The school library is an interesting place _____ you can get necessary information.
 a. in where b. which c. from that d. from which
62. Jonathan has a little sister _____ he plays all the time.
 a. with who b. with whom c. that d. whose
63. The woman _____ next to me wants to ask a question.
 a. sitting b. sits c. whom is sitting d. whose is sitting
64. _____ Lee came to the country, he could not speak any word of English!
 a. Since b. While c. No sooner d. Before
65. _____ the news, I rushed straight to the police station.
 a. Before I have heard b. Whenever I hear
 c. While I was hearing d. As soon as I had heard
66. We will have finished our work _____ they arrive.
 a. by b. until c. by the time d. up to

67. The little boy said to his friend, "Hide this toy car _____."
 a. that other boys cannot find it b. where other boys cannot find it
 c. where cannot other boys find it d. so where other boys cannot find it
68. _____ the people in the world are living in poverty.
 a. As many as half b. So many as half c. More half than d. As much as half
69. Which mountain is _____, the Andes or the Rockies?
 a. higher b. the higher c. more higher d. the highest
70. Do it when you can but _____ it is done, _____.
 a. soon / it is good b. sooner / better
 c. the more soon / the more good d. the sooner / the better
71. You succeed again! You must be _____ man in the world.
 a. happy b. the happier c. happiest d. the happiest
72. You may get malaria _____ by a mosquito.
 a. if you are bitten b. unless you were bitten
 c. if you would be bitten d. unless you would be bitten
73. The company will cancel the commercial _____ they increase their earnings.
 a. unless b. if c. provided that d. without
74. If I _____ it was a formal party, I _____ wearing jeans and a jumper.
 a. knew / would not go b. had known / would not have gone
 c. had been knowing / did not go d. could know / will not have gone
75. _____ it were well-paid, I would accept this job.
 a. Providing b. Unless c. But for d. If only
76. I left home early _____ I had some important things to do.
 a. for b. because c. because of d. due to
77. Because _____, he is seldom at home.
 a. of his business b. his business
 c. of there is a lot of business d. a lot of business
78. _____ it is your birthday, you can sit in the front.
 a. Thanks to b. Due to c. Because of d. Since
79. _____, she has not succeeded in the examination.
 a. Even though Sarah's cleverness b. Although Sarah is clever
 c. Despite Sarah is clever d. In spite her cleverness
80. _____ the difficulties, they continued their plan.
 a. Even if b. Despite c. In spite d. Even though
81. _____ I could not persuade him to change his mind.
 a. Even though trying my best b. Despite I tried my best
 c. Although I tried my best d. In spite of I tried my best
82. It was _____ a cold day _____ we wrapped ourselves in blankets.
 a. such / that b. so / that c. such / as d. so / as
83. We have _____ time left that we have to take a taxi to the airport.
 a. so little b. such little c. so many d. such many
84. There were _____ in the sky that we could not see much.
 a. so clouds b. so many clouds c. such clouds d. such many clouds

85. He had his car checked in the garage _____ make sure that it would be ready for his trip.
 a. so b. so that c. so as to d. in order that
86. A lot of people head for the mountains with warm sleeping bags _____ they can sleep out and watch the stars.
 a. in order to b. so as to c. so that d. that
87. Let's go upstairs and talk _____ a bit of privacy.
 a. so for getting b. in order we get c. so that getting d. so as to get
88. The widow acted _____.
 a. as if her husband had not died b. as though her husband does not die
 c. as her husband had not died d. as if her husband would not die
89. Practice more frequently _____.
 a. as your teacher has advised b. as if your teacher had advised
 c. even if your teacher advised d. as though your teacher has advised
90. She has caused a lot of troubles but she behaves _____ an outsider.
 a. as she were b. as she had been
 c. as though she were d. as if she is

Error identification

91. To achieve independent has been the goal of many nations since World War II.
 A B C D
92. Though it was writing for children, *Alice in Wonderland* appeals to many adult readers.
 A B C D
93. Exceeding speed limits and fail to wear safety bells are two common causes of automobile death.
 A B C D
94. Gabriel Marquez, after received his 1982 Nobel Prize for Literature, appeared on the cover of *Time* magazine.
 A B C D
95. Ships can only reach Antarctica during a relatively short period because the extremely cold condition.
 A B C D
96. Though both cats and dogs existed before human beings, without man, they will not have developed as many varieties.
 A B C D
97. Fruit and vegetables should be carefully washed whether eaten fresh or cook.
 A B C D
98. Oscar Wilde lived out his final days in obscurity in France in spite the brilliance of his early career.
 A B C D
99. The Olympic Games, first celebrated in Athens in 1896, were held every four years so far, except during the two world wars.
 A B C D

17. There are not _____ on the pavement.
 a. much trees b. many trees c. a lots trees d. a lot of tree
18. He lost _____ his money at a casino in Las Vegas.
 a. all b. any c. a number of d. no
19. The situation will be better, _____?
 a. isn't it b. does it c. won't it d. will they
20. _____ laptop is it?
 a. Which b. What c. Whose d. Who
21. _____? – She's at work.
 a. Does she at work b. Does she at home or at work
 c. Is she at work d. Is she at home or at work
22. She's at _____.
 a. the doctor office b. the doctor's c. doctor's office d. the office of doctor
23. Most _____ is acute.
 a. animals' sense's smell b. animals' smell of sense
 c. animals sense of smell d. animals' sense of smell
24. _____ is especial. I think it has been love at first sight.
 a. Date tonight b. Tonight of date c. Tonight date d. Tonight's date
25. I would rather you did not do such a stupid thing again.
 a. Such a stupid thing has been done many times.
 b. You have done such a stupid thing many times.
 c. I hope you will not do such a stupid thing again.
 d. You can do such a stupid thing as many times as possible.
26. School rules must not be ignored.
 a. You needn't obey the school rules.
 b. School rules needn't be observed.
 c. School rules are not important to you.
 d. You must take notice of the school rules.
27. I regret behaving so rudely to you.
 a. Behaving so rudely to you was not my concern.
 b. I was not sorry for behaving so rudely to you.
 c. I will never mind behaving so rudely to you.
 d. I wish I had not behaved so rudely to you.
28. Archie came to see _____ off.
 a. we b. us c. our d. ours
29. Women are always moved when they find somebody who understands _____ better than they know _____.
 a. their / theirs b. they / them c. themselves / their d. them / themselves
30. The company closes because _____ cannot increase _____ profit.
 a. its / it b. it / it's c. itself / it d. it / its
31. Our children go to _____ school by _____ bus.
 a. the / a b. the / the c. a / the d. Ø / Ø
32. _____ summer of 1996, when I was born, was hot and dry.
 a. A b. An c. The d. Ø

33. How about going to _____ Netherlands next _____ summer?
 a. \emptyset / \emptyset b. the / the c. the / \emptyset d. \emptyset / the
34. There was a sound _____.
 a. in the living room b. it is in the living room
 c. so in the living room d. as to be in the living room
35. Jennifer and I went to the mall to buy a blender, _____.
 a. it is a necessary tool for making milkshakes
 b. a necessary tool for making milkshakes
 c. that a necessary tool to make milkshakes
 d. for it is a necessary tool for making milkshakes
36. We picked up the records _____.
 a. that broken in the scuffle b. broken in the scuffle
 c. breaking in the scuffle d. it is breaking in the scuffle
37. That beautiful car _____.
 a. recently has just been bought b. just has been recently bought
 c. has just been bought recently d. has been just bought recently
38. He got a job _____.
 a. in best company in the town b. in the company in best town
 c. in the best company in town d. in town in the best company
39. I like her _____.
 a. hair long straight black b. black long straight hair
 c. long straight black hair d. straight long black hair
40. She is interested _____ dressing. She spends a lot of money _____ clothes.
 a. about / in b. over / at c. in / on d. at / for
41. I think you should invest _____ shares.
 a. in b. for c. on d. about
42. Bye! See you _____ Christmas.
 a. upon b. on c. at d. in
43. I have _____ the problem several times, but I cannot _____ a solution.
 a. looked after / turned off b. gone over / think of
 c. put out / got through d. come for / threw out
44. Mary and I are best friends. We have always _____ very well together.
 a. taken over b. got on c. put in d. gone out
45. I am sure everything will _____ OK in the end.
 a. hold on b. take off c. turn out d. go up
46. They have not seen him anywhere since last week.
 a. He has been nowhere to be seen since last week.
 b. He has not been seen nowhere since last week.
 c. He has not seen anywhere since last week.
 d. He has been not seen anywhere since last week.
47. I will call you as soon as my work _____.
 a. will be finished b. was finished c. has been finished d. had been finished
48. People say that the bridge was destroyed in the war.
 a. The bridge says being destroyed in the war.
 b. The bridge is said being destroyed in the war.

- c. The bridge is said to be destroyed in the war.
d. The bridge is said to have been destroyed in the war.
49. Seldom _____ the opportunity to do whatever _____.
- a. did we have / did we want b. did we have / we wanted
c. we had / we wanted d. we had / did we want
50. _____, we would have a barbecue.
- a. The weather was fine b. Were the weather fine
c. Is the weather fine d. The weather is fine
51. _____ that _____ nothing.
- a. Such a sorrow did she suffer / she could say
b. Such a sorrow did she suffer / could she say
c. Did she suffer such a sorrow / she could say
d. Did she suffer such a sorrow / could she say
52. The boss _____.
- a. asked me if have the customers arrived
b. said if the customers have arrived
c. asked me if the customers had arrived
d. said to me if the customers had arrived
53. The doctor told me _____ worry because my illness _____ serious.
- a. not be / is not b. not to be / was not
c. do not be / has not been d. not being / will not be
54. Tom told Mary he had bought a new car three days _____.
- a. then b. after c. ago d. before
55. It is _____ that leads to the _____ of the ozone layer.
- a. pollution / loss b. pollute / lost c. polluted / lose d. pollutant / lose
56. The aim of the new policy is the _____ of _____.
- a. preservation / peace b. preserve / peaceful
c. preservative / peacefully d. preserved / peaceable
57. The most terrible _____ of tropical forests is fires.
- a. destroy b. destructive c. destruction d. destroyer
58. I was really surprised _____.
- a. what she said b. by what she said
c. what did she say d. by what did she say
59. _____ should not be important to the friendship.
- a. How much money your friends make
b. How much money do your friends make
c. Your friends can make how much money
d. Can your friends make money or not
60. English teachers dispense wisdom to _____.
- a. listening b. will who listen c. that listens d. whoever will listen
61. _____ have young children do not have much time for themselves.
- a. Those who b. Whom c. Those which d. With whom
62. Do you know the reason _____ Isabel was not in class today?
- a. for that b. that c. at which d. why

63. This is the girl _____ car hit that tree last week.
 a. whose b. who c. which d. that
64. I have played tennis _____ I was a young boy.
 a. as b. since c. after d. until
65. Her brother got married _____ he finished college.
 a. before b. in order that c. if only d. provided
66. You should give the iron time to heat up _____.
 a. while you will iron your clothes b. after you are ironing your clothes
 c. before you iron your clothes d. as you will iron your clothes
67. Put the vase _____.
 a. as the children cannot reach it b. because the children cannot reach it
 c. where the children cannot reach it d. where cannot the children reach it
68. It was _____ castle we visited during our holidays
 a. older b. more old than c. the oldest d. eldest
69. Most poor people are _____ prepared for their future than the rich ones are.
 a. little b. less c. least d. the least
70. _____ I get, _____ I forget!
 a. The older / the more b. The old / the most
 c. The oldest / more d. Older / more
71. I speak English _____.
 a. more good than John does b. as good as John is
 c. better than John is d. better than John does
72. You can seek a place in the university _____ its requirements.
 a. unless you would meet b. in case you will meet
 c. if you meet d. if you will meet
73. If you _____ to come, _____ me as soon as possible.
 a. want / please contact b. wanted / please contacting
 c. would want / please contacted d. will want / please to contact
74. _____ you apologize, I will not forgive you.
 a. If b. Unless c. Provided that d. In case
75. Keep quiet _____ you out.
 a. if I would send b. I would have sent
 c. unless I would send d. or I will send
76. Janna was absent for 3 weeks _____ her illness.
 a. because b. because of c. since d. as
77. They did not tell her the truth _____ to let her down.
 a. because of they did not want b. because they did not want
 c. because not wanting d. due to not wanting
78. _____ Ann was cheated by the salesmen, she was angry.
 a. Because of b. Due to c. Since d. For
79. _____ Susan has a good job, she cannot afford to move out of her parents' house.
 a. Although b. Despite c. In spite of d. In spite
80. Mary knows that she has to change her diet _____.
 a. In spite of her love of sugary snacks b. Even though her love of sugary snacks
 c. Despite she loves sugary snacks d. Despite of her love of sugary snacks

81. _____ the damaging effect of cars are now well-recognized, the number of cars on the road continues to grow every year.
 a. If b. As if c. If only d. Even if
82. We keep our food in the fridge _____.
 a. so that not to go bad b. such that it does not go bad
 c. in order so that it does not go bad d. so that it does not go bad
83. Hockey players wear lots of protective clothing _____ they do not get hurt.
 a. so as b. in order c. so as to d. in order that
84. Women used to make great efforts _____ recognitions in every aspect.
 a. so that getting b. in order to get c. so as to getting d. as order to get
85. The rain was _____ they could not go on their trip.
 a. so heavy that b. such heavy that c. as heavy that d. such heavily that
86. Johnny worked _____ hard _____ he made himself ill.
 a. so / that b. so / as c. such / that d. such / as
87. _____ the town took decades to recover.
 a. So great the destruction was that b. Such great was the destruction that
 c. So great was the destruction that d. So great the destruction was that
88. Her company was broke, but she acted _____.
 a. as though nothing will happen b. as nothing has happened
 c. as if nothing had happened d. as though nothing happens
89. I will do it _____.
 a. as though I promised b. as I have ever promised
 c. as if I have ever promised d. as though I had promised
90. She is used to talking _____.
 a. if she were a princess b. as if she were a princess
 c. as if she is a princess d. as though she is a princess

Error identification

91. Vietnam faces a challenge which it is the rapid increase of motor vehicles, particularly in the big cities.
 A B C
 D
92. The environment in Vietnam is seriously affected by three main factors: rapid population grow, migration, and urbanization.
 A B
 C D
93. Millions of years ago, water covered much of how is now North America.
 A B C D
94. As personal incomes grow and vehicles become more affordable, problems associated with pollution have emerged like a major urban issue.
 A B
 C D
95. After months of colder weather, the days get longer, the buds come out in the trees, birds sing, and the world put on a green dress.
 A B C
 D

96. Man is constant destroying the natural resources which keep him alive.
 A B C D
97. Several developed countries have had a rapid decline in fertility because
 many women there have delayed to have children.
 A B C D
98. It is estimated that the population of Vietnam will reach 100 million for
 the next 25 years and will stabilize at 120 million by the middle of this century.
 A B C D
99. Many years ago, the climate of North America became such cold that great
sheets of ice covered most of Canada.
 A B C D
100. Man is damaging the balance of nature which regulates climate and the
 atmosphere, produces and maintain healthy soils, provides food from the seas.
 A B C D

PRACTICE TEST 10

Choose a, b, c, or d that is the best alternative.

1. While John _____ last night, someone _____ his car.
 a. was sleeping / stole b. is sleeping / has stolen
 c. had slept / was stealing d. slept / had stolen
2. She _____ golf for three hours by the time she _____ the round.
 a. is playing / will finish b. has been playing / finishes
 c. will have been playing / finishes d. was playing / finished
3. Every day John _____ at the company at 8 o'clock, but this morning he
 _____ late because he _____ the bus.
 a. arrives / was / missed b. has arrived / has been / was missing
 c. is arriving / is / has missed d. was arriving / had been / has missed
4. I _____ this work before I leave.
 a. must to finish b. must finish
 c. should have finished d. needn't to finish
5. The concert _____ wonderful last night because Fiore is always a great conductor.
 a. should have been b. must have been c. may be d. could be
6. Children _____ with cleaning liquids.
 a. mustn't play b. needn't play
 c. would be playing d. had not better play
7. I intend _____ to my boss about your complaint.
 a. speak b. to speak c. speaking d. spoken
8. Peter was delighted _____ a former colleague at the conference.
 a. meet b. to meet c. meeting d. met
9. We finished the job _____ 12 hours a day.
 a. to work b. by work c. by working d. worked

10. She is well-educated. _____, she has very good manners.
 a. And b. Besides c. However d. But
11. They got off the train. _____ they began to search for a hotel.
 a. Then b. And c. But d. However
12. I was worried; _____, I was determined not to show it.
 a. and so b. and yet c. but d. nevertheless
13. The International Club, as well as the Choral Society and the Rowing Club,
 _____ to submit a new constitution.
 a. needs b. need c. are needing d. have needed
14. A large percentage of the older population _____ against Ms. Helen Young.
 a. vote b. have voted c. are voting d. is voting
15. The woman with her dogs _____ by my house every morning.
 a. walks b. walk c. is walking d. are working
16. There is _____ left on the table.
 a. a few food b. a little food c. many foods d. foods
17. I have _____ friends in Chicago.
 a. every b. no c. any d. the number of
18. I have got _____ extra money saved up in the bank.
 a. a few b. many c. some d. any
19. Things have been ready, _____?
 a. do they b. aren't you c. has it d. haven't they
20. _____ are your children? – They are fine.
 a. How b. What c. Who d. How about
21. _____ arrived home safely?
 a. Does Peter b. Peter did c. Has Peter d. Will Peter
22. _____ is the pink one, looking over the sea.
 a. The Pikes' house b. The Pike's house c. The Pikes's house d. The Pike house
23. _____ will be indoors as it is getting colder.
 a. Party's next week b. Next week of party
 c. Next week party d. Next week's party
24. A _____ is a place where drinks, small meals, tea, and cakes are served.
 a. room's tea b. room of tea c. tea's room d. tea room
25. As soon as John arrived at the pub, the lights went out.
 a. The lights went out before John arrived at the pub.
 b. No sooner had John arrived at the pub than the lights went out.
 c. John arrived at the pub where there were not lights.
 d. The lights went out because John arrived at the pub.
26. Mr. Pike will get some workers to dig the garden.
 a. Mr. Pike will have the garden dug.
 b. The garden will be dug by Mr. Pike and some workers.
 c. Mr. Pike and some workers will dig the garden.
 d. Both Mr. Pike and some workers will dig the garden.
27. There is no doubt that he will win the gold medal.
 a. He can never win the gold medal.
 b. That he will win the gold medal is not known.

- c. We are not sure that he will win the gold medal
d. We are sure that he will win the gold medal.
28. _____ ideas of the new policy are quite different from _____.
a. His / mine b. He / my c. Him / I d. His / me
29. My wife has become crippled by arthritis. She is embarrassed to ask the doctor about _____.
a. it b. herself c. them d. him
30. They all seemed to be enjoying _____.
a. their b. they c. theirs d. themselves
31. He went to _____ United States to learn _____ computer science.
a. \emptyset / \emptyset b. an / the c. the / \emptyset d. the / a
32. He has _____ good knowledge of computers.
a. a b. an c. the d. \emptyset
33. It was _____ excellent meal. It was better than _____ one which we had last night.
a. an / the b. a / an c. the / an d. an / an
34. He is opening his mouth _____.
a. very wide b. to be very wide c. being very wide d. so very wide
35. Lightning flashed brightly _____.
a. as in the sky b. when in the night sky
c. it is in the sky d. in the night sky
36. _____ is before a water shortage.
a. Being the best time to practice water conservation
b. When the best time to practice water conservation
c. The best time practice water conservation
d. The best time to practice water conservation
37. The children went _____.
a. yesterday afternoon to a film b. to a film yesterday afternoon
c. to a film afternoon yesterday d. afternoon yesterday to a film
38. The infection was probably caused _____.
a. in contaminated water by swimming b. by swimming in contaminated water
c. in water contaminated by swimming d. by swimming in water contaminated
39. I will buy _____ when I get the salary.
a. a new English dictionary b. an English new dictionary
c. a new dictionary English d. an English dictionary new
40. Southern Rail would like to apologize _____ the late running of this train.
a. upon b. with c. at d. for
41. You have to be responsible _____ your boss _____ the work.
a. from / at b. over / on c. in / through d. to / for
42. It is the lack _____ gravity _____ the moon that makes possible leaps of 30 feet or more.
a. from / at b. of / on c. in / through d. at / over
43. Supply of goods is failing to _____ demand.
a. make of b. look for c. put on d. keep up with
44. _____ the shoes to see if they fit.
a. Go on b. Get in c. Take off d. Try on

45. The police _____ because there was no evidence of his guilty.
 a. took him over b. put him through c. let him off d. sent him in
46. Many children's breath _____ by the pollution in the city.
 a. is affecting b. is affect c. is being affected d. affected
47. Dr. Fleming, who _____ penicillin, _____ the Nobel Prize of Medicine in 1945.
 a. was discovered / was awarded b. discovered / was awarded
 c. discovering / awarded d. discovers / awarding
48. Have they sent Peter the document he needs yet?
 a. Has Peter was sent the document he needs yet?
 b. Does Peter have been sent the document he needs yet?
 c. Has Peter been sent the document he needs yet?
 d. Has been Peter sent the document he needs yet?
49. _____ the room when _____.
 a. Scarcely we had entered / did the telephone ring
 b. Scarcely had we entered / did the telephone ring
 c. Scarcely we had entered / the telephone rang
 d. Scarcely had we entered / the telephone rang
50. _____ us _____ us some money.
 a. Not only Peter helped / but also lent
 b. Not only Peter helped / but did he also lend
 c. Not only did Peter help / but also lent
 d. Not only did Peter help / but he also lent
51. _____ that _____ it three times.
 a. So interesting is the film / have we seen
 b. So interesting is the film / we have seen
 c. So interesting the film is / we have seen
 d. So interesting the film is / have we seen
52. Nancy wanted to know _____ to New York _____.
 a. why Nick did not go / last summer
 b. why Nick had not gone / the summer before
 c. why did not Nick go / last summer
 d. why had Nick not gone / the summer before
53. John advised Mary _____ so hard.
 a. did not work b. not working c. not to work d. had not worked
54. I asked myself _____ the old painting I had found was worth any money or not.
 a. that b. if c. that if d. if that
55. The patient who suffers from lung cancer is being injected with a special _____.
 a. chemist b. chemistry c. chemical d. chemically
56. _____ is very important in using lasers.
 a. Precise b. Precisely c. Precisive d. Precision
57. At last, we were able to draw a _____.
 a. conclude b. conclude c. conclusive d. conclusion
58. Mr. Jones is valuable for _____.
 a. he knows about history b. what does he know about history
 c. what he knows about history d. what knowing about history

59. _____ is unimportant.
 a. He won or lost
 b. Whether did he win or lose
 c. Whether he won or lost
 d. What did he win or lose
60. _____ is a painting by Vincent Van Gogh.
 a. What you see now
 b. What do you see
 c. You see now
 d. Do you now
61. That is the young man _____ we owe many thanks.
 a. to whom
 b. who
 c. that
 d. to that
62. It is the boss _____ is the most important.
 a. whose decision
 b. that decides
 c. who decides
 d. which decision
63. Please tell me the time _____ I can come for the interview.
 a. that
 b. when
 c. on that
 d. where
64. You shouldn't drive _____ alcohol.
 a. after you have drunk
 b. while you will drink
 c. after drink
 d. as soon as you will drink
65. _____, the first thing we saw was a church.
 a. No sooner we approach
 b. Soon before approaching
 c. As we approached the village
 d. When we would approach the village
66. _____ had they finished their project than they prepared for another one.
 a. No until
 b. As long as
 c. As soon as
 d. No sooner
67. Don't go away from me. Stand _____.
 a. where I can see you
 b. where can I see you
 c. where to see you
 d. in where I can see you
68. Miss World is even _____ in real life _____ in photos.
 a. as beautiful / more
 b. more beautiful / as
 c. the more beautiful / than
 d. more beautiful / than
69. It seems that we have _____ for ourselves and our family.
 a. more time than
 b. less and less time
 c. as many time as
 d. time less than
70. They are both pretty but Susan is the _____ of the two.
 a. most pretty
 b. prettiest
 c. prettier
 d. pretty
71. That washing machine is _____ but _____ in quality.
 a. a bit more expensive / better than
 b. a bit as expensive / many better
 c. a little more than expensive / more good
 d. a little bit more expensive / much better
72. If we _____ the map, _____ lost now.
 a. took / would not have got
 b. had taken / we would not have got
 c. take / will not get
 d. had taken / we would not get
73. You will have to pay higher insurance _____ a sports car.
 a. if you buy
 b. if you will buy
 c. unless you bought
 d. provided that you did not buy
74. If the traffic _____ bad, I may get home late.
 a. is
 b. were
 c. was
 d. had been
75. If you take the 8 a.m. flight to New York you _____ change the plane.
 a. could not have to
 b. will not have to
 c. had not had to
 d. would not to have to

76. _____ past deforestation and illegal hunting, many species of mammals and flora have disappeared.
 a. Because of b. Because c. As d. Since
77. Those children have stayed in the hospital for a long time _____.
 a. due to they are seriously ill b. because of they are seriously ill
 c. because their serious illnesses d. because of their serious illnesses
78. You need proper shoes to go hiking in the mountains ____ the ground is rough and hard.
 a. because of b. due to c. since d. thanks to
79. _____ the same class with Paul for two years, I never knew him very well.
 a. Even though sharing b. In spite I shared
 c. Although I shared d. Despite of sharing
80. Hard-working _____ he is, he will never be top of his class.
 a. although b. as c. despite d. in spite
81. _____ thousands of accidents happen every day, many people seem not to observe the traffic laws.
 a. If b. As if c. If only d. Even if
82. The thieves are running as fast as possible _____ caught by the police.
 a. in order that not be b. so that being c. so as not to be d. in order be
83. Mary closed the door and the window _____ disturbed by the noise.
 a. so that she was not b. in order that not to be
 c. so as was not d. so as she was not
84. Keep your password secret _____ others cannot access your account.
 a. so as that b. so as to c. in order to d. so that
85. She made _____ she failed the exam.
 a. such many mistakes that b. so many mistakes that
 c. many so mistakes that d. many such mistakes that
86. He had _____ he went hiking.
 a. such many time that b. so much time that
 c. so few time that d. such few time that
87. They worked _____ hard _____ they passed the exam at high grades.
 a. so / that b. such / that c. so / as d. such / as
88. It was his mistake but he pretended _____ nothing wrong.
 a. as if b. as there had been
 c. as though there had been d. as though there has been
89. She was deeply sad after her husband's death, but she behaved _____ she had been OK.
 a. if b. as if c. even if d. if only
90. Operate the machine _____.
 a. as if you have been instructed b. as if were instructed
 c. as you have been instructed d. as though you have been instructed

Error identification

91. From bones finding in the United States, we have learned that many animals
 A B
 which no longer existed in the world once made their homes there.
 C D

92. Although they are an inexpensive supplier of vitamins, minerals, and high quality protein, eggs contain a high level of blood cholesterol, one of the major cause of heart disease.
 A B C D
93. There may be 8,000 or more people ran in the race through the streets of San Francisco.
 A B C D
94. Since the world was industrialized, the number of animal species that has become extinct has increased.
 A B C D
95. With as few as 5,000 tigers remaining in the world today, time is running quick out for this powerful animal.
 A B C D
96. If you are not completely satisfied on our goods, contact us within ten days and we will arrange collection and refund your money in full.
 A B C D
97. It is often said that an early life of hardship and poverty made Abraham Lincoln to be the great leader he was.
 A B C D
98. From the beginning of the twentieth century to the present, technology has developed too much that people begin to think that there are no limits to what we can achieve.
 A B C D
99. Uranium, found in trace quantities, are an exceedingly rare and potentially dangerous element.
 A B C D
100. There was during the Industrial Revolution that the United States was able to increase productivity through mechanization.
 A B C D

PRACTICE TEST 11

Choose a, b, c, or d that is the best alternative.

1. He _____ this book for 3 months by the end of this week.
 a. has been writing b. was writing c. is writing d. will have written
2. It _____ dry here at this time of the year. It _____ much.
 a. is usually / does not rain b. has usually been / is not raining
 c. will usually be / has not rained d. was usually / will rain
3. Yesterday evening the phone _____ three times while you _____ dinner out with your friends.
 a. would have rung / are having b. was ringing / have been having
 c. rang / have had d. had rung / were having

4. John _____ lazy but he is certainly not stupid.
 a. should be b. may be c. mustn't be d. must have been
5. My little brother _____ Japanese and French though he is only ten years old.
 a. can speak b. must be speaking
 c. should have spoken d. shouldn't be speaking
6. You _____ to do the homework or the teacher will punish you.
 a. mustn't forget b. needn't forget c. will be forgetting d. must have forgot
7. Bob sent a report to the Chairman instead _____ the meeting.
 a. to attend b. to attending c. of attending d. attended
8. I regret _____ you that you did not pass the test. However, you should try _____ it again.
 a. telling / do b. told / doing c. told / done d. to tell / to do
9. It is no use _____ the boss for a pay rise.
 a. ask b. to ask c. asking d. asked
10. She does not study very well _____ I think she will pass her exams.
 a. but b. so c. and d. or
11. We like games and music, _____ reading.
 a. as b. as well as c. but d. therefore
12. She was not in the back yard, _____ was she upstairs.
 a. or b. nor c. and d. so
13. Do not add _____ to the machine. Just _____ will be enough.
 a. some oil / no drop b. a few oil / a little drop
 c. many oils / any drop d. too much oil / some drops
14. Bill spends _____ money on clothes, but _____ on travelling
 a. a little / some b. as many / some c. a few / many d. little / much
15. We have _____ to do.
 a. few homeworks b. any homework c. a lot of homework d. some homeworks
16. _____ from here to the station? – Only 2 kilometers.
 a. How far is it b. How far does it c. How long is it d. How long does it
17. You used to live in London, _____?
 a. don't you b. didn't you c. weren't you d. haven't you
18. _____ the room been cleaned yet?
 a. Does b. Has c. Is d. Was
19. Eight dollars _____ the price of a movie these days.
 a. are b. is c. have been d. were
20. _____ the news on at 5 or 6 o'clock?
 a. Is b. Are c. Have d. Were
21. Seeing films _____ my favorite hobby.
 a. is b. are c. were d. were used to be
22. I have just bought a cottage by _____.
 a. the lake side b. the lake's side
 c. the side of the lake d. the side's lake
23. I think your proposals are the same as _____.
 a. Peter b. Peter's c. it of Peter d. this of Peter

24. All of them hope that everything will be ready in _____.
- a. three day time b. three days' time c. three-day's time d. time three days
25. Peter was not always so hopeless.
- a. Peter never had a hope for anything. b. Peter was used to being hopeless.
c. Peter gave up his hope. d. Peter did not use to be so hopeless.
26. The number of people who approved of his ideas exceeded his expectations.
- a. He had expected that nobody would disapprove of his ideas
b. He had expected that everybody would approve of his ideas.
c. Less people approved of his ideas than he had expected.
d. More people approved of his ideas than he had expected.
27. Julie and Anne had not met each other before the party.
- a. Julie and Anne got acquainted when they were at the party.
b. The party prevented Julie and Anne from meeting each other.
c. The party was the place where Julie and Anne could not meet each other.
d. Julie and Anne used to meet each other for the party.
28. Mountain gorillas are an endangered species. _____ habitats are being destroyed.
- a. Its b. His c. Her d. Their
29. John admitted that he _____ would take any blame.
- a. itself b. himself c. themselves d. ourselves
30. When _____ lived in the village, _____ only light was candles and an oil lamp.
- a. we / ourselves b. we / our c. our / ours d. ourselves / we
31. _____, she went to bed.
- a. On reading a book and a newspaper after that
b. Reading a book and a newspaper then
c. After reading a book and a newspaper
d. To read a book and a newspaper
32. _____, you may have only one solution.
- a. In such a matter like this b. Like this matter
c. In case the matter such as this d. Being this matter
33. Peter was the last person _____.
- a. to learn the news b. for learning the news
c. learnt the news d. the news learnt
34. Only one of _____ world's ten highest peaks is located outside of _____ Himalayas.
- a. the / the b. the / an c. \emptyset / \emptyset d. the / \emptyset
35. _____ flower gets its smell from _____ oil that the plant produces.
- a. The / an b. A / the c. \emptyset / \emptyset d. A / an
36. _____ cattle raising began in Texas before _____ Civil War.
- a. \emptyset / \emptyset b. \emptyset / the c. A / the d. The / \emptyset
37. On the trip to Paris, Mrs. Young fell in love with _____.
- a. an interesting young man b. a young interesting man
c. a man interesting and young d. an interesting man young
38. Daisy had _____.
- a. a careful look on the picture at the wall
b. a look careful at the picture on the wall

- c. a careful look on the wall at the picture
d. a careful look at the picture on the wall
39. It _____. Put on the raincoat.
a. heavily is raining outside b. is outside raining heavily
c. is outside raining heavily d. is raining heavily outside
40. My birthday coincides _____ the national holiday.
a. on b. with c. as d. to
41. Peter went _____ the man and asked him the best way to get _____ town.
a. out of / up to b. up to / out of c. on / into d. for / away from
42. _____ conclusion, the company has made a substantial profit _____ its sales.
a. On / of b. At / in c. In / from d. For / with
43. I wish you would never _____ stories like that.
a. make up b. keep away c. put off d. take on
44. What are the main health problems that _____ smoking?
a. take on b. put through c. go with d. get on
45. His father has two bodyguards _____ him every hour of the day.
a. keep off b. think up c. watch over d. look for
46. Since the boy was disruptive, he _____ from school.
a. had expelled b. was expelling c. was be expelled d. was expelled
47. While it is actually a planet, Venus _____ a star in the night sky.
a. often mistakes for b. has often mistaken
c. is often mistaken d. is often mistaken as
48. The process of selecting a variety of essential proteins* _____ protein complementation.
a. calls b. is called c. called d. are called
49. _____ a more beautiful ballet than that one.
a. Never I have seen b. Never have I seen
c. Have I seen never d. Have I never seen
50. _____ that a dangerous stretch of road lay ahead of us.
a. Little we realized b. Little did we realize
c. Did we realize little d. Did we little realize
51. Scientists have not been able to cure AIDS, _____ any vaccine against the disease.
a. nor they have found b. nor have they found
c. not they have found d. no have they found
52. Christopher asked me _____.
a. that I could dance b. whether I can dance
c. if I could dance d. if could I dance
53. Barbara asked me _____ her homework that afternoon.
a. whether must she do b. that she has to do
c. if she had to do d. if she must do
54. " _____," the doctor advised his patient.
a. You had better stop drinking b. I would like you to drink
c. You had better to drink d. Please drink some more

55. Computers were not _____ available until the 1950s.
 a. commerce b. commercial c. commercially d. commercialize
56. The audience were very _____ by her _____.
 a. impressive / performer b. impress / performing
 c. impressed / performance d. impressing / perform
57. There is now intense _____ between schools to attract students.
 a. compete b. competition c. competitive d. competitor
58. It was very unfortunate _____.
 a. that the chairman was ill b. if the chairman was ill
 c. that the chairman is ill d. the ill chairman
59. _____ was the question asked by the campus authorities.
 a. Whose the bike belonged to b. That the bike belongs to
 c. Who is the bike belonged d. Which is the bike belong
60. Do you know _____?
 a. how far the moon is from the earth
 b. how far is the moon from the earth
 c. that how far the moon is from the earth
 d. that how far is the moon from the earth
61. You are the new secretary _____, aren't you?
 a. started work yesterday b. who started work yesterday
 c. whom started work yesterday d. which started work yesterday
62. All of the goals can be accomplished through procedures _____.
 a. whose we have developed b. in which we have developed
 c. for that we have developed d. we have developed
63. The Chinese restaurant, _____ spacious and clean, is in the centre of the city.
 a. is b. that is c. which is d. where is
64. Will he wait _____?
 a. before the show will end b. since the show ends
 c. until the show ends d. after the show will end
65. Do not leave _____.
 a. no sooner I arrive b. soon I arrive c. before I arrive d. before I will arrive
66. _____, you know that the moon is pulling the water up.
 a. No longer you see high tide b. Until do you see high tide
 c. When you will see high tide d. When you see high tide
67. I never want to move out. I shall remain _____.
 a. where I am b. where am I c. what I am d. what am I
68. Poor people have _____ access to basic social services _____ the rich do.
 a. less / than b. less / as c. the least / than d. the least / as
69. Lung cancer is one of _____ diseases among men.
 a. the more common b. the most common
 c. many more common d. many less common
70. Coins are _____ paper notes.
 a. more durable as b. more durable than
 c. most durable than d. most durable as

71. English wine is good but French wine is _____.
 a. more good b. gooder c. better d. the better
72. If you _____ to my advice when you began the work, you _____ in trouble now.
 a. took / were not b. take / are not
 c. had taken / would not have been d. had taken / would not be
73. _____ you cross the road carelessly, you may get a traffic accident.
 a. If b. Unless c. But for d. If only
74. _____ our good market research, we _____ bankrupt.
 a. Unless / will not have gone b. If / will not go
 c. Suppose / would not go d. But for / would have gone
75. The dog _____ you if you _____ it.
 a. will not attack / was not teasing
 b. would not attack / had not teased
 c. will not have attacked / did not teased
 d. would not have attacked / had not teased
76. _____ the teacher gave him an extra day to do the work he still could not complete it.
 a. If b. Even if c. If only d. As if
77. _____, I tried my best not to quit my university study.
 a. In spite used to be in a financial difficulty
 b. Despite I used to be in a financial difficulty
 c. Though I used to be in a financial difficulty
 d. Even though in a financial difficulty
78. _____ he lives optimistically.
 a. Even if his unhappiness b. Unhappy although he is
 c. In spite of his unhappiness d. Despite he is unhappy
79. Kathy put on weight _____ she had been eating too much sugar.
 a. since b. because of
 c. due to d. because the fact that
80. _____, we lost the game.
 a. As the fact that I made a mistake b. Due to my mistake
 c. Because my mistake d. In case my mistake
81. _____ she persevered steadily she achieved success.
 a. Because b. Due to c. Thanks to d. Because of
82. John and Mary are _____ they donate half of their salaries to charity.
 a. such generous men that b. so generous men that
 c. such generous men as d. so generous men as
83. They have _____ they cannot find time for themselves.
 a. such many things to do that b. such things for doing that
 c. so much things to do that d. so many things to do that
84. He read _____ he did not get enough knowledge for the exams.
 a. so few books as b. such few books that
 c. such a few books as d. so few books that
85. He always pays attention to her every word _____ some sort of goddess.
 a. as she was b. as if she were
 c. if only she had been d. as though she is

98. Ecosystems regulate the climate, determine the composition of the atmosphere,
 A B
make new soil, controlling diseases, and provide food.
 C D
99. National Parks are usually located in places where have been largely undeveloped,
 A B
 and are often with exceptional native animals, plants, and unusual geological features.
 C D
100. Because an insufficient amount of protein in the diet can cause illnesses, it is
 A B
 imperative that our diet containing an ample amount of the essential proteins.
 C D

PRACTICE TEST 12

Choose a, b, c, or d that is the best alternative.

1. John _____ economics at Oxford University since he _____ to England six months ago.
 a. is studying / has come b. studies / is coming
 c. has been studying / came d. will study / comes
2. When Carol _____ by last night, we _____ our favorite show on television.
 a. dropped / were watching b. drops / are watching
 c. has dropped / watched d. was dropping / have watched
3. The students _____ by Mr. Pike, but Mr. Pike _____ ill since last week so this week they _____ by Mrs. Young.
 a. are usually being taught / will be / are teaching
 b. are usually teaching / is / has been taught
 c. have usually been taught / was / are taught
 d. are usually taught / has been / are being taught
4. _____ I use that computer for a while?
 a. Should b. Needn't c. Won't d. May
5. Plants _____ have sunlight in order to survive.
 a. must b. should c. mustn't d. will
6. It is late. It is time we _____ home.
 a. needn't go b. should go c. must have gone d. ought to have gone
7. Mary regrets _____ the money to Nick because he has never paid the money he borrows.
 a. lend b. to lend c. lending d. lent
8. It is hot. We feel like _____ something cool.
 a. drink b. to drink c. drinking d. drunk
9. Susan refused _____. She hated being kept _____.
 a. wait / waited b. to wait / waiting
 c. waiting / to wait d. waited / wait
10. They visited many stores; _____, they could not find what they were looking for.
 a. but b. however c. and d. moreover

11. He works slowly and precisely _____ his workmate tends to rush things and makes mistakes.
 a. so b. or c. and d. whereas
12. Do you know his address _____ telephone number?
 a. yet b. but c. so d. or
13. Most women have to do _____.
 a. a lot of housework b. many houseworks c. a few housework d. some houseworks
14. We need _____ for the cake.
 a. any sugar b. a few sugars c. some more sugar d. many sugars
15. There is not _____ petrol in the tank, so we'll have to stop at a petrol station on the way.
 a. a number of b. many c. enough d. some
16. _____ sugar do you often take in your coffee? –Two teaspoons.
 a. How many b. How much c. What d. What about
17. _____ lasers be used to treat cancers?
 a. Do b. Can c. Have d. Were
18. The World Wildlife Fund supplies aid to protect forests, _____?
 a. do they b. has it c. won't they d. doesn't it
19. Either Tom or I _____ the meeting.
 a. are going to lead b. leads c. is leading d. am leading
20. Neither the basket nor the apples _____ on the table.
 a. are b. is c. was d. has been
21. In last conference the number of attendees _____ two hundred.
 a. was b. were c. are d. is
22. In Turkey, _____ is called _____.
 a. Valentine Day / Sweethearts Day b. Valentine's Day / Sweethearts Day
 c. Valentine's Day / Sweethearts' Day d. Valentine Day / Sweethearts' Day
23. Nowadays, most students wear _____.
 a. school's uniform b. schools' uniform c. school uniform d. uniform schools'
24. We needn't take a taxi. It is just a _____.
 a. ten-minute walk b. ten minute's walk
 c. ten minutes' walk d. ten minutes walk
25. By the time Mary saw the job advertised, it was already too late for her to apply.
 a. It was the advertisement that helped Mary got the job.
 b. Seeing the job advertised too late, so Mary could not apply for it.
 c. Although Mary was the job advertised late, she managed to apply for it.
 d. In spite of seeing the job advertised late, Mary succeeded in getting it.
26. He is tall enough to change the bulb without getting on a chair.
 a. Whenever he changes the bulb he needs a chair.
 b. He is tall but he cannot change the bulb without getting on a chair.
 c. He is so tall that he can change the bulb without getting on a chair.
 d. He often gets on a chair, and then changes the bulb.
27. If only I had not come to that awful party.
 a. I wish I had not come to that awful party.
 b. I knew that the party would be awful, so I did not come.

- c. Although the party was awful, I do not regret coming.
d. I do not regret coming, whether the party was awful or not.
28. The director's wife did not come but the director _____ did and brought with him _____ little girl.
a. he / himself b. his / he c. himself / his d. he / his
29. - Did you draw this picture?
- No, a friend of _____ in New York did _____.
a. me / them b. I / him c. my / you d. mine / it
30. _____ Peter and Mary that often help us with gardening.
a. We are b. She is c. He is d. It is
31. When I was at _____ Cambridge University, I study _____ Physics.
a. \emptyset / \emptyset b. the / the c. the / a d. \emptyset / the
32. At _____ beginning of the twentieth century, Los Angeles became _____ popular immigrant destination.
a. the / a b. \emptyset / the c. \emptyset / \emptyset d. an / the
33. _____ amazing thing happened to me yesterday. _____ man mistook me for his girlfriend.
a. The / An b. An / A c. A / The d. The / \emptyset
34. _____ were rescued by the firemen.
a. As the earthquake's last three men
b. The earthquake with the last three victims
c. Being the last three victims of the earthquake
d. The last three victims of the earthquake
35. _____, he could not go to school on that day.
a. Ill b. To be ill c. As being ill d. Being ill
36. _____, she ran into the room.
a. Frighten, hear the news b. Hearing a noise, after frightened
c. She frightened, hearing a noise d. Frightened, after hearing a noise
37. The government is very worried about the increase of _____.
a. the youth unemployment rate b. the unemployment youth rate
c. the rate youth unemployment d. the youth rate unemployment
38. Chopin, _____, died at Place Vendôme.
a. a composer worldwide famous b. a composer famous worldwide
c. a worldwide famous composer d. a famous worldwide composer
39. He _____ all that on his own.
a. possibly cannot have drunk b. cannot have possibly drunk
c. cannot possibly have drunk d. cannot have drunk possibly
40. My favorite place to be _____ midnight on Halloween is _____ home with a scary movie _____ TV.
a. in / in / from b. at / at / on c. for / on / in d. on / over / at
41. We have seen many increases _____ production levels.
a. at b. in c. through d. on
42. Peter likes taking photographs _____ the mountains.
a. through b. of c. from d. upon
43. The burglars _____ before the police arrived.
a. made off b. took out c. went through d. ran in

Error Identification

91. Today, women are protected by the Sex Discrimination Act; but, inequality
A B C D
still persists.
92. UNESCO has international cooperation agreements to secure the world's
A B C
cultural and natural heritage and preserving human rights.
D
93. Education is recognized as an essential need for achieving equal in most
A B C D
walks of life.
94. The World Health Organization (WHO) is a specialized agency of the United
A B
Nations, that acts as a coordinating authority on international public health.
C D
95. Do you know that reading can keep your mind acted and engaged well when
A B C D
you get old?
96. Future is a time when most people assume that everything will keep getting
A B C
better and future generations will enjoy life in a more better world.
D
97. Qualifications and experience are two the most important factors that help
A B C D
you get a good job.
98. Public universities, private universities, arts colleges, and community colleges
A
all has a significant role in higher education in the United States.
B C D
99. Studying abroad can be a meaningful and rewarding experience, which
A B C
gives students the chance to live overseas, integrating themselves into a
D
totally foreign culture, meet other students, and travel.
100. Affecting by the Western cultures, Vietnamese young people's attitudes
A B C
towards love and marriage have dramatically changed.
D

HẾT PHẦN LÝ THUYẾT VÀ BÀI TẬP

ĐÁP ÁN

MODULE 1: PERSONAL PRONOUNS, POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS, AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

1a	2c	3a	4b	5a	6b	7a	8c	9d	10d	11a	12c	13b
14b	15b	16d	17a	18b	19d	20c	21d	22a	23c	24b	25a	26c
27b	28d	29c	30a	31a	32a	33b	34b	35c	36a	37a	38d	39a
40b	41b	42d	43c	44a	45d	46b	47b	48a	49c	50d		

MODULE 2: COUNTABLE AND UNCOUNTABLE NOUNS, QUANTIFIERS

1c	2c	3b	4a	5b	6d	7d	8c	9b	10a	11d	12c	13b
14b	15b	16a	17a	18a	19b	20d	21c	22c	23c	24a	25a	26d
27d	28b	29a	30c	31b	32a	33d	34c	35b	36a	37b	38c	39b
40a	41d	42d	43b	44b	45d	46a	47a	48c	49c	50b		

MODULE 3: COMPOUND NOUNS AND GENITIVE / POSSESSIVE CASE

1b	2a	3d	4d	5a	6c	7a	8b	9d	10d	11d	12b	13a
14a	15d	16d	17a	18b	19b	20c	21b	22a	23a	24b	25c	26b
27b	28d	29d	30c	31b	32a	33a	34c	35c	36c	37b	38d	39d
40a	41d	42a	43c	44c	45b	46a	47a	48d	49b	50b		

MODULE 4: ARTICLES

1b	2c	3d	4a	5a	6b	7c	8d	9b	10a	11c	12d	13d
14d	15a	16b	17b	18c	19d	20b	21a	22c	23b	24b	25a	26d
27a	28d	29b	30c	31d	32a	33a	34c	35c	36b	37d	38d	39d
40a	41b	42c	43a	44a	45d	46b	47c	48a	49a	50d		

MODULE 5: PREPOSITIONS

1c	2b	3a	4d	5d	6a	7c	8b	9a	10d	11a	12d	13c
14b	15b	16a	17a	18d	19c	20c	21b	22a	23a	24d	25d	26d
27b	28a	29a	30b	31b	32c	33c	34b	35b	36a	37c	38d	39d
40c	41a	42a	43b	44c	45b	46a	47d	48d	49c	50b		

MODULE 6: PHRASAL VERBS

1b	2a	3b	4c	5d	6d	7c	8b	9a	10a	11c	12c	13c
14b	15a	16b	17d	18d	19a	20c	21c	22a	23b	24b	25d	26a
27c	28c	29d	30b	31a	32a	33b	34d	35d	36c	37a	38a	39a
40c	41b	42c	43d	44b	45d	46b	47c	48a	49b	50d		

MODULE 7: CONJUNCTIONS

1b	2d	3c	4a	5a	6a	7d	8d	9c	10b	11b	12a	13d
14d	15c	16c	17b	18a	19a	20d	21a	22c	23d	24b	25d	26a
27c	28c	29b	30d	31a	32a	33c	34b	35d	36a	37c	38b	39d
40d	41a	42d	43b	44a	45c	46b	47d	48a	49c	50b		

MODULE 8: SUBJECT – VERB AGREEMENT

1b	2a	3c	4a	5a	6d	7b	8d	9d	10a	11c	12a	13d
14a	15b	16c	17b	18a	19a	20a	21b	22a	23d	24c	25b	26c
27a	28a	29a	30b	31b	32d	33c	34a	35d	36a	37b	38c	39c
40c	41c	42d	43a	44b	45a	46d	47b	48b	49a	50c		

MODULE 9: TENSES

1b	2a	3c	4b	5b	6a	7a	8b	9c	10c	11c	12a	13a
14a	15d	16d	17d	18a	19c	20b	21b	22a	23c	24a	25c	26c
27c	28a	29b	30b	31a	32d	33c	34d	35d	36c	37a	38c	39b
40a	41a	42c	43c	44c	45b	46a	47b	48d	49c	50a	51a	52b
53c	54d	55d	56a	57c	58d	59b	60c	61d	62a	63b	64c	65b
66c	67b	68d	69a	70a	71c	72c	73b	74b	75d	76a	77a	78c
79b	80b	81a	82a	83d	84d	85b	86c	87d	88d	89d	90b	91d
92b	93a	94a	95b	96a	97c	98d	99a	100b				

MODULE 10: MODAL VERBS

1b	2a	3d	4d	5b	6b	7a	8c	9b	10d	11c	12b	13b
14b	15d	16a	17d	18a	19a	20b	21d	22d	23a	24a	25c	26a
27c	28d	29c	30b	31c	32a	33a	34d	35c	36c	37a	38b	39a
40d	41d	42b	43c	44b	45a	46b	47b	48d	49b	50c		

MODULE 11: CONDITIONAL SENTENCES - WISH AND IF ONLY

1a	2b	3b	4c	5a	6d	7a	8b	9d	10c	11c	12a	13a
14b	15d	16d	17c	18a	19b	20d	21c	22c	23a	24d	25b	26d
27c	28d	29c	30a	31b	32a	33c	34a	35d	36d	37d	38a	39c
40c	41a	42d	43c	44b	45c	46a	47d	48a	49c	50c		

MODULE 12: PASSIVE FORM

1a	2b	3d	4b	5b	6b	7a	8c	9c	10d	11b	12c	13d
14a	15c	16d	17c	18d	19a	20d	21c	22a	23b	24c	25a	26b
27d	28c	29c	30a	31b	32c	33a	34d	35c	36b	37b	38d	39d
40d	41c	42c	43b	44a	45c	46c	47c	48a	49a	50d		

MODULE 13: REPORTED SPEECH

1d	2a	3b	4a	5b	6c	7a	8a	9c	10d	11d	12b	13d
14a	15b	16a	17b	18d	19a	20c	21a	22d	23a	24d	25c	26d
27b	28a	29c	30c	31d	32c	33a	34c	35d	36c	37b	38c	39a
40a	41d	42a	43b	44b	45c	46a	47c	48a	49a	50a		

MODULE 14: GERUNDS AND INFINITIVES

1b	2b	3b	4d	5d	6c	7c	8a	9b	10b	11d	12d	13c
14c	15a	16c	17d	18d	19b	20d	21b	22a	23d	24c	25c	26a
27d	28d	29b	30b	31a	32a	33a	34d	35d	36b	37c	38b	39c
40a	41b	42b	43d	44d	45c	46b	47c	48c	49a	50b		

MODULE 15: COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS

1a	2c	3b	4d	5a	6a	7a	8b	9a	10b	11d	12d	13d
14c	15b	16a	17b	18b	19d	20c	21a	22c	23c	24d	25b	26a
27a	28c	29b	30b	31b	32d	33a	34d	35a	36a	37c	38b	39d
40b	41c	42c	43c	44b	45b	46d	47c	48b	49b	50d		

MODULE 16: RELATIVE CLAUSES

1a	2c	3c	4a	5b	6b	7a	8d	9c	10b	11d	12d	13d
14c	15a	16b	17b	18d	19c	20c	21b	22d	23a	24a	25c	26c
27d	28a	29d	30d	31d	32b	33a	34b	35a	36a	37a	38a	39b
40c	41c	42a	43b	44b	45a	46d	47a	48c	49b	50b		

MODULE 17: ADVERB CLAUSES

1b	2c	3a	4a	5d	6d	7b	8b	9a	10c	11b	12c	13d
14d	15a	16c	17d	18d	19c	20a	21b	22c	23a	24a	25d	26a
27c	28c	29d	30a	31c	32a	33a	34c	35b	36a	37d	38d	39c
40b	41a	42d	43a	44b	45b	46a	47a	48c	49a	50a	51b	52c
53c	54d	55b	56c	57a	58d	59b	60a					

MODULE 18: NOUN CLAUSES

1b	2c	3d	4a	5c	6b	7c	8b	9d	10c	11b	12a	13c
14a	15a	16d	17d	18b	19b	20a	21b	22d	23d	24b	25c	26a
27a	28d	29c	30d	31a	32a	33c	34b	35d	36c	37b	38a	39a
40c	41b	42d	43c	44a	45a	46d	47c	48c	49b	50a		

MODULE 19: WORD FORM AND WORD ORDER

1b	2d	3b	4d	5d	6c	7a	8d	9d	10b	11b	12c	13a
14a	15b	16a	17c	18a	19d	20c	21b	22b	23a	24c	25c	26d

27c	28a	29c	30a	31d	32a	33c	34b	35c	36a	37a	38c	39c
40d	41c	42d	43a	44b	45c	46c	47d	48a	49a	50b	51b	52d
53a	54a	55c	56c	57d	58c	59a	60a	61b	62c	63d	64a	65b
66a	67c	68c	69c	70b	71a	72c	73c	74d	75a	76a	77c	78c
79c	80b	81b	82a	83a	84d	85b	86d	87c	88b	89b	90d	91d
92a	93b	94a	95c	96c	97d	98b	99c	100a				

MODULE 20: QUESTIONS (CÂU HỎI)

1a	2c	3b	4b	5c	6a	7c	8b	9c	10d	11b	12a	13a
14c	15c	16b	17b	18d	19d	20d	21a	22c	23c	24a	25a	26c
27d	28b	29a	30d	31b	32c	33a	34a	35c	36c	37d	38b	39a
40d	41c	42b	43c	44d	45b	46a	47c	48d	49b	50c		

MODULE 21: PHRASES

1b	2c	3b	4d	5d	6a	7b	8b	9d	10d	11d	12a	13c
14c	15b	16a	17b	18c	19c	20a	21b	22b	23d	24c	25d	26d
27d	28a	29d	30b	31d	32a	33b	34d	35d	36a	37d	38b	39c
40b	41c	42a	43d	44a	45c	46b	47c	48a	49d	50d		

MODULE 22: INVERSION

1d	2d	3b	4a	5c	6c	7a	8d	9c	10b	11c	12a	13d
14b	15d	16a	17b	18c	19a	20d	21c	22b	23d	24a	25b	26b
27b	28d	29d	30a	31a	32c	33a	34c	35b	36d	37d	38b	39c
40d	41a	42b	43c	44a	45c	46b	47d	48a	49d	50b		

PRACTICE TEST 1

1b	2b	3b	4d	5d	6b	7a	8a	9a	10a	11b	12a	13b
14a	15b	16b	17c	18a	19a	20b	21d	22b	23b	24c	25c	26b
27a	28a	29c	30b	31b	32a	33a	34c	35d	36b	37d	38a	39d
40b	41a	42c	43a	44c	45b	46c	47a	48c	49c	50a	51a	52c
53c	54b	55a	56a	57c	58b	59c	60a	61c	62b	63b	64b	65d
66a	67a	68a	69d	70c	71d	72d	73a	74c	75b	76b	77a	78a
79a	80d	81c	82a	83a	84d	85d	86d	87a	88a	89b	90c	

91B: have grown → has grown

93B: reducing → reduce / to reduce

95A: grow → growth

97C: was → has been

99A: for → at

92A: world → world's

94C: because → because of / due to

96C: the → ∅

98C: too → so

100B: or → but also

PRACTICE TEST 2

1c	2d	3c	4b	5a	6d	7b	8a	9d	10b	11d	12c	13b
14d	15d	16c	17d	18d	19a	20b	21d	22c	23a	24b	25d	26a
27b	28d	29a	30c	31a	32b	33b	34a	35b	36d	37d	38a	39b
40d	41b	42b	43b	44d	45d	46d	47b	48a	49d	50c	51d	52a
53b	54d	55a	56a	57c	58a	59d	60a	61a	62a	63d	64a	65c
66d	67b	68a	69d	70b	71d	72d	73b	74b	75a	76a	77c	78b
79b	80a	81c	82b	83d	84b	85b	86a	87c	88a	89c	90a	

91B: confident → confidence

92D: year → years

93D: as → than

94D: so as → such as

95C: industrializing → industrialized

96A: lot of → a lot of / lots of

97D: cooking → to cook

98B: any → many

99B: thousand → thousands

100A: hardly → hard

PRACTICE TEST 3

1b	2b	3a	4a	5c	6c	7c	8b	9d	10a	11d	12b	13a
14b	15b	16b	17b	18a	19c	20a	21d	22a	23d	24b	25a	26d
27c	28b	29c	30a	31a	32b	33d	34a	35d	36b	37b	38c	39a
40a	41c	42b	43d	44a	45c	46c	47a	48a	49c	50a	51d	52b
53a	54d	55c	56a	57a	58b	59b	60d	61a	62c	63d	64b	65a
66c	67b	68a	69b	70d	71c	72c	73b	74a	75d	76a	77a	78d
79c	80d	81a	82a	83a	84c	85d	86d	87a	88d	89d	90d	

91C: make → do

92B: it → that / which

93D: it → its

94D: much as → more than

95A: recognizing → recognized

96B: increasing → increasingly

97D: will be → would be

98A: have → has

99D: discover → discovery

100D: electric → electricity

PRACTICE TEST 4

1c	2d	3b	4b	5b	6c	7d	8a	9a	10c	11c	12a	13a
14b	15d	16a	17a	18c	19a	20b	21b	22c	23d	24a	25b	26a
27c	28b	29b	30c	31b	32b	33c	34b	35a	36c	37b	38a	39d
40b	41b	42a	43c	44d	45c	46b	47c	48d	49b	50c	51d	52c
53d	54b	55d	56b	57c	58d	59a	60a	61b	62a	63c	64a	65b
66c	67b	68b	69a	70c	71d	72b	73c	74b	75a	76b	77a	78c
79a	80c	81b	82a	83a	84d	85a	86c	87d	88c	89a	90d	

91C: became → has become

92C: which → ∅

93A: estimates → is estimated

94C: most → more

95A: are → is

96C: many → a lot / a great deal

97C: understand → understood

99C: and → but also

98D: putting → put

100C: many → much / far

PRACTICE TEST 5

1d	2d	3c	4d	5b	6a	7c	8a	9d	10c	11c	12d	13a
14c	15b	16a	17c	18d	19b	20d	21c	22b	23c	24d	25a	26b
27c	28c	29a	30b	31d	32a	33c	34d	35d	36a	37b	38c	39d
40b	41a	42a	43c	44a	45a	46c	47b	48d	49a	50c	51a	52b
53a	54c	55c	56d	57c	58c	59d	60b	61b	62c	63c	64b	65c
66d	67d	68b	69c	70c	71d	72a	73d	74d	75b	76a	77c	78c
79a	80c	81d	82a	83b	84b	85b	86b	87b	88c	89c	90c	

91B: are → is

93A: It said → It is said

95C: importance → important

97A: Yuri Gagarin → Yuri Gagarin's

99C: they provide → it provides

92C: but → and

94C: that → which

96D: a → the

98D: work → working

100B: make → made

PRACTICE TEST 6

1c	2a	3d	4c	5c	6d	7d	8d	9c	10a	11b	12d	13a
14b	15d	16d	17d	18b	19b	20a	21d	22a	23c	24c	25a	26a
27c	28c	29a	30a	31c	32d	33d	34d	35d	36c	37a	38d	39d
40b	41c	42a	43a	44b	45d	46d	47c	48a	49d	50d	51b	52b
53d	54a	55c	56c	57c	58b	59c	60d	61a	62d	63d	64c	65a
66b	67b	68b	69c	70d	71a	72c	73b	74a	75d	76b	77a	78a
79c	80c	81b	82a	83c	84d	85a	86a	87a	88b	89b	90d	

91C: because of → because / since / as

93C: persistency → persistent

95A: remaining → to remain

97D: violent → violence

99B: others → other

92C: found → foundation

94A: While → During

96B: keeping → keep

98B: children → child

100B: is lose → is lost

PRACTICE TEST 7

1d	2c	3a	4d	5a	6a	7c	8a	9b	10c	11a	12a	13b
14d	15b	16c	17d	18a	19c	20a	21b	22d	23b	24c	25a	26a
27c	28c	29a	30b	31c	32b	33c	34d	35a	36d	37b	38c	39a
40a	41d	42a	43a	44a	45a	46d	47d	48b	49c	50b	51d	52a
53a	54a	55a	56d	57b	58b	59a	60b	61a	62b	63d	64c	65d
66a	67d	68c	69b	70d	71a	72a	73d	74c	75a	76a	77a	78d
79c	80b	81c	82a	83c	84a	85a	86c	87d	88a	89c	90b	

91D: preventing → prevents

93A: has been → have been

95A: more → most

97C: getting → get

99B: be → being

92C: which → who

94D: but → and

96B: number → deal

98B: such → so

100C: least → less

PRACTICE TEST 8

1d	2a	3d	4b	5a	6d	7d	8b	9a	10a	11c	12d	13c
14c	15a	16c	17a	18d	19a	20c	21a	22b	23a	24b	25c	26c
27c	28c	29b	30c	31a	32b	33c	34a	35c	36a	37a	38c	39c
40a	41b	42b	43b	44b	45a	46b	47b	48c	49c	50d	51c	52d
53d	54a	55b	56b	57c	58b	59d	60a	61d	62b	63a	64d	65d
66c	67b	68a	69a	70d	71d	72a	73a	74b	75a	76b	77a	78d
79b	80b	81c	82a	83a	84b	85c	86c	87d	88a	89a	90c	

91B: independent → independence

93B: fail → failing

95D: because → because of / due to

97D: cook → cooked

99C: were held → have been held

92B: was writing → was written

94A: received → receiving

96D: will → would

98C: in spite → despite / in spite of

100D: many → much / far

PRACTICE TEST 9

1c	2d	3d	4c	5b	6b	7d	8b	9c	10c	11b	12a	13d
14d	15a	16b	17b	18a	19c	20c	21d	22b	23d	24d	25c	26d
27d	28b	29d	30d	31d	32c	33c	34a	35b	36b	37c	38c	39c
40c	41a	42c	43b	44b	45c	46a	47c	48d	49b	50b	51a	52c
53b	54d	55a	56a	57c	58b	59a	60d	61a	62d	63a	64b	65a
66c	67c	68c	69b	70a	71d	72c	73a	74b	75d	76b	77b	78c
79a	80a	81d	82d	83d	84b	85a	86a	87c	88c	89b	90b	

91B: it is → is

93D: how → what

95D: put → puts

97D: to have → having

99B: such → so

92D: grow → growth

94D: like → as

96B: constant → constantly

98C: for → in

100C: maintain → maintains

PRACTICE TEST 10

1a	2c	3a	4b	5b	6a	7b	8b	9c	10b	11a	12d	13a
14d	15a	16b	17b	18c	19d	20a	21c	22a	23d	24d	25b	26a
27d	28a	29a	30d	31c	32d	33a	34a	35d	36d	37b	38b	39a
40d	41d	42b	43d	44d	45c	46c	47b	48c	49d	50d	51b	52b

53c 54b 55c 56d 57d 58c 59c 60a 61a 62a 63b 64a 65c
 66d 67a 68d 69b 70c 71d 72d 73a 74a 75b 76a 77d 78c
 79c 80b 81d 82c 83a 84d 85b 86b 87a 88c 89b 90c

91A: finding → found

92D: cause → causes

93C: run → running

94C: has → have

95D: quick → quickly

96B: on → with

97C: to be → be

98C: too much → so much

99B: are → is

100A: There was → It was

PRACTICE TEST 11

1d 2a 3d 4b 5a 6a 7c 8d 9c 10a 11b 12b 13d
 14d 15c 16a 17b 18b 19b 20a 21a 22a 23b 24b 25d 26d
 27a 28d 29b 30b 31c 32a 33a 34a 35b 36b 37a 38d 39d
 40b 41b 42c 43a 44c 45c 46d 47d 48b 49b 50b 51b 52c
 53c 54a 55c 56c 57b 58a 59a 60a 61b 62d 63c 64c 65c
 66d 67a 68a 69b 70b 71c 72d 73a 74d 75d 76b 77c 78c
 79a 80b 81a 82a 83d 84d 85b 86c 87a 88a 89a 90d

91B: extinct → extinction

92C: paying → pay / to pay

93B: of that → of which

94A: has → have

95A: that → which

96D: nor → or

97B: many → / much / far

98D: controlling → control

99B: where → which / that

100C: containing → contain

PRACTICE TEST 12

1c 2a 3d 4d 5a 6b 7c 8c 9b 10b 11d 12d 13a
 14c 15c 16b 17b 18d 19d 20a 21a 22c 23c 24c 25b 26c
 27a 28c 29d 30d 31a 32a 33b 34d 35d 36d 37a 38c 39c
 40b 41b 42b 43a 44a 45d 46b 47b 48d 49c 50c 51c 52a
 53d 54d 55a 56c 57d 58b 59b 60a 61b 62d 63c 64b 65a
 66a 67d 68d 69a 70a 71c 72b 73a 74c 75c 76a 77d 78d
 79d 80b 81a 82a 83a 84c 85c 86c 87d 88d 89c 90a

91C: but → however

92D: preserving → preserve

93D: equal → equality

94C: that → which

95C: acted → active

96D: more better → better

97C: the most → most

98B: has → have

99D: integrating → integrate

100A: Affecting → Affected

HẾT